

RAIL PUBLIC REGISTER COPY

REDACTED IN ACCORDANCE WITH FOIA 2000

# Emergency Measures Agreement ("EMA")

The Secretary of State for Transport

and

First Trenitalia West Coast Rail Limited

Withdrawn March 2024

31 March 2020

CONTENTS

CLAUSE	PAGE
1. INTERPRETATION AND CONSTRUCTION.....	1
2. PURPOSE OF THIS EMA .....	2
3. COMMENCEMENT AND TERM .....	2
4. AMENDMENTS TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT .....	3
5. COOPERATION.....	3
6. ADDITIONAL SERVICES .....	3
7. MEETINGS .....	4
8. REMEDIAL PLANS.....	4
9. FARES .....	4
10. TREATMENT OF REVENUE AND PROFIT SHARE MECHANISMS .....	4
11. FUNDING DEED .....	5
12. CHANGE .....	5
13. PERFORMANCE BENCHMARKS .....	5
14. RELEVANT OBLIGATIONS.....	6
15. COVID-19 RELATED SUPPORT .....	6
16. STATE AID .....	6
17. EXPIRY OF THE EMA – RECALIBRATION ITEMS .....	7
18. WARRANTIES .....	7
19. ENTIRE AGREEMENT .....	7
20. COUNTERPARTS .....	7
21. COSTS.....	8
22. GOVERNING LAW.....	8
23. RIGHTS OF THIRD PARTIES .....	8
SCHEDULE 1 .....	9
Amendments to the Franchise Agreement .....	9

Withdrawn March 2024

**THIS AGREEMENT** is made the 31 March 2020

**BETWEEN:**

- (1) **Secretary of State for Transport**, whose principal place of business is at Great Minster House, 33 Horseferry Road, London SW1P 4DR (the "**Secretary of State**"); and
  - (2) **First Trenitalia West Coast Rail Limited** (Company Number: 10349442), whose registered office is at 4th Floor, Capital House, 25 Chapel Street, London NW1 5DH (the "**Franchisee**"),
- each a "**Party**" and together, the "**Parties**".

**RECITALS:**

- (A) The Secretary of State and the Franchisee entered into a franchise agreement dated 28 August 2019 in respect of certain railway passenger services designated by the Secretary of State as eligible for provision under franchise agreements (the "**Franchise Agreement**").
- (B) On 11 March 2020 the World Health Organisation declared the coronavirus disease 2019 ("**COVID-19**") a pandemic. It is anticipated that COVID-19 will have a significant impact on the operation of rail services in the United Kingdom.
- (C) The Secretary of State wishes to amend the Franchise Agreement to address the impact of the COVID-19 outbreak on Train Operators by suspending or amending the operation of specific provisions, and introducing additional requirements, under the terms of the Franchise Agreement for the duration of the Term and any Extended Term (if applicable) in accordance with clause 0 of this Emergency Measures Agreement ("**EMA**").
- (D) The Parties now wish to record their agreement regarding the amendments to the Franchise Agreement to address the impacts of COVID-19 by entering into this EMA.
- (E) The Franchisee acknowledges that this EMA is entered into pursuant to article 5(5) of Regulation (EC) 1370/2007.

**THE PARTIES AGREE AS FOLLOWS:**

**1. INTERPRETATION AND CONSTRUCTION**

**1.1 Interpretation**

In this EMA (unless the context otherwise requires):

- (a) words and expressions defined under the Franchise Agreement and the Act shall have the same meanings when used in this EMA;
- (b) words and expressions defined in the Interpretation Act 1978 shall have the same meanings when used in this EMA;
- (c) the words "including", "include" and "in particular" are to be construed without limitation;
- (d) references to a person include its successors, transferees and assignees;
- (e) references in this EMA to clauses and schedules are to clauses and schedules of this EMA unless expressly specified to the contrary;

- (f) headings and references to headings shall be disregarded in construing this EMA;
- (g) references to an agreement or other document shall be construed as referring to that agreement or document as from time to time supplemented, varied, replaced, amended, assigned or novated; and
- (h) words importing the masculine gender include the feminine gender and vice versa and words in singular include the plural and vice versa.

## 1.2 Construction

- (a) This EMA is supplemental to and shall be read and construed together with the Franchise Agreement and this EMA and the Franchise Agreement shall together constitute one and the same document.
- (b) In the event of conflict between the terms of this EMA and the terms of the Franchise Agreement, subject to clause 0, the terms of this EMA shall prevail.
- (c) Save as expressly provided for in this EMA the Franchise Agreement shall continue in full force and effect.
- (d) Any reference to the "term" or "duration" of the EMA shall mean the Term and any Extended Term (if applicable) in accordance with clause 0 of this EMA.

## 2. PURPOSE OF THIS EMA

### 2.1 The Parties acknowledge that:

- (a) this EMA is based on the following overriding principles:
  - (i) the Parties recognising the exceptional circumstances presented by COVID-19;
  - (ii) the Parties seeking to ensure that, as far as possible, operational performance and the provision of Passenger Services is maintained;
  - (iii) the Parties seeking to ensure the Franchisee is insulated as far as is reasonable from the severe financial impacts of COVID-19 whilst not being overcompensated; and
  - (iv) the Parties cooperating with an overall goal of acting in the national interest; and
- (b) this EMA has been prepared as an emergency measure in a circumstance of extreme emergency. To the extent that there are any anomalies or inconsistencies within this EMA or with the terms of the Franchise Agreement as a result of the variations imposed by this EMA, the Parties shall discuss such matters in good faith and work towards a practical and sensible solution, to further amend the Franchise Agreement to reflect the intention of this EMA.

## 3. COMMENCEMENT AND TERM

### 3.1 Subject to clause 0, this EMA shall take effect from 1 April 2020 ("**EMA Start Date**") and shall continue until the earlier of:

- (a) 1.59 a.m. on 20 September 2020; or
- (b) the date the Parties mutually agree to terminate this EMA,

(the "**Term**").

- 3.2 Notwithstanding clause 0, the provisions of Appendix 2 to Schedule 8A(EMA), included in 0 to this EMA (Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments)) shall apply retrospectively from 1 March 2020.
- 3.3 Subject to clause 0, the Parties may, by mutual agreement, extend the variations to the Franchise Agreement imposed by this EMA by a further period ("**Extended Term**") and upon such agreement to extend, this EMA shall remain in full force and effect until the expiry of the Extended Term.
- 3.4 The Secretary of State shall have an unfettered discretion in proposing, accepting or refusing any extensions to the Term.
- 3.5 The amendments to the Franchise Agreement pursuant to this EMA shall, unless otherwise required by the Secretary of State or pursuant to this EMA, cease to have effect on the later of the expiry of the Term or the Extended Term (as applicable).
- 3.6 At the expiry of the EMA the variations imposed on the Franchise Agreement by this EMA shall cease and the Franchise Agreement, with certain limited exceptions, shall continue on the terms and conditions operating before entry into this EMA.
- 3.7 The limited exceptions referred to in clause 0 generally consist of amendments to expunge the impact of the period the EMA was in place from certain of the Franchise Agreement performance metrics and to recalibrate such metrics and amounts (the "**Recalibration Items**") to take account of their temporary suspension for the duration of the EMA (see clause 17).

#### 4. **AMENDMENTS TO THE FRANCHISE AGREEMENT**

With effect from the EMA Start Date until the expiry of the Term or the Extended Term (as applicable), the Franchise Agreement shall be varied as set out in 0 to this EMA and by clauses 5 to 18 below.

#### 5. **COOPERATION**

- 5.1 The Franchisee agrees to coordinate and cooperate with other Train Operators, Network Rail and other rail industry bodies, to ensure the continuation of Passenger Services across the network in a coordinated manner, and in line with the priorities and directions as may be set out by the Secretary of State from time to time, including, but not limited to:
- (a) coordinating with other Train Operators to ensure consistency of coverage to all communities across the national network, including changes to Franchise Services to assist where other Train Operators are unable to operate their own Franchise Services;
  - (b) assisting altered or additional freight services to operate on the national rail network and, where appropriate, enabling certain essential goods (such as medical equipment or other urgent items) to be carried on Passenger Services; and
  - (c) continuing where possible and appropriate to enforce any agreements with third parties to deliver quality and value for money.

#### 6. **ADDITIONAL SERVICES**

- 6.1 The Franchisee acknowledges that the Secretary of State may require special measures, in the form of increased cooperation or additional services, to be implemented while COVID-19 subsists and the Franchisee shall use its best endeavours to accommodate such requests and act in the national interests.

6.2 The Franchisee, if requested by the Secretary of State, shall use its best endeavours to provide additional services, such as enhanced cleaning regimes to a standard reasonably proposed by the Secretary of State.

6.3 The reasonable and proper costs incurred in carrying out such additional services shall be recoverable from the Secretary of State as part of the Actual Costs subject to the provisions of Schedule 8A(EMA) of the Franchise Agreement, as set out in Appendix 2 to 0 to this EMA.

## 7. MEETINGS

7.1 Where the Franchise Agreement refers to a "meeting" of the Parties or the Parties and other third parties, such meetings may be conducted by conference call or other remote link as mutually agreed between the Parties.

## 8. REMEDIAL PLANS

8.1 Subject to the provisions of Schedule 10.1A of the Franchise Agreement, as amended by this EMA, the requirement to submit a Remedial Plan shall be suspended for the duration of the EMA.

8.2 Any Remedial Plans that are in place at the start of the EMA will be reviewed by the Secretary of State within thirty (30) Weekdays and the Secretary of State shall determine (acting in its absolute discretion) and confirm in writing whether the Remedial Plan will be:

- (a) continued "as is";
- (b) delayed;
- (c) suspended; or
- (d) reduced in scope or application.

## 9. FARES

9.1 The Franchisee shall remain responsible for the collection of fare revenue using the same degree of skill, diligence, prudence and foresight which would be exercised by a skilled and experienced Train Operator using all reasonable endeavours to maximise revenue, whilst giving consideration to appropriate customer service in light of the prevailing circumstances and any guidance from the Secretary of State, Public Health England or other relevant authority in relation to public interaction.

9.2 To the extent a ticket is sold which relates partially to the term of the EMA and partially to the period before 1 March 2020 or after the expiry of the EMA, this shall be accounted for using the same principles that apply on the transfer of a franchise.

## 10. TREATMENT OF REVENUE AND PROFIT SHARE MECHANISMS

10.1 The Parties acknowledge and agree that the revenue risk-sharing mechanisms, the profit share mechanism and any other relevant regimes that are prescribed in annual terms under the Franchise Agreement (prior to the implementation of the EMA) shall be treated for the Franchisee Year beginning in April 2019 as if that Franchisee Year had ended at the end of the twelfth Reporting Period in the same manner as may be provided for in the Franchise Agreement for an early termination and/or exercising part of a year in an optional extension period. If and to the extent that the Franchise Agreement does not already otherwise pro rate or otherwise make an allocation in relation to a part year, the Secretary of State will, acting reasonably, determine the appropriate pro rating for the relevant figures or metric.

**11. FUNDING DEED**

- 11.1 The Funding Deed shall remain in force and shall not be amended by this EMA.
- 11.2 The Franchisee will not pay any interest accruing in relation to any loans provided under the Funding Deed during the term of the EMA. Such interest shall remain due at the expiry of the EMA.
- 11.3 Subject to clause 0, the Franchisee shall not during the term of the EMA repay any part of any Agreed Funding Commitment (whether by way of a Scheduled Repayment or Additional Repayment) or PCS Facility Loan (each as defined in the Funding Deed) that has been advanced pursuant to the Funding Deed.
- 11.4 The Franchisee shall be entitled to use a sum equivalent to the payment made by the Secretary of State pursuant to Appendix 2 of Schedule 8A(EMA) of the Franchise Agreement in relation to the Reporting Period starting on 1 March 2020 (less any element of that payment which consists of Management Fee), to repay any PCS Advance made to the Franchisee between 1 March 2020 and 31 March 2020, provided such repayment occurs before 30 April 2020.

**12. CHANGE**

- 12.1 Save as specified in Schedule 1 to this EMA, the provisions of Schedule 9A (Changes and Variations) of the Franchise Agreement shall be suspended for the duration of the EMA. For the avoidance of doubt, the provisions of Schedule 9B (Changes and Variations) of the Franchise Agreement shall continue to apply.
- 12.2 Unless otherwise specifically agreed by the Secretary of State, the impacts of COVID-19 shall not be considered, and such impact shall be excluded, in relation to any of the limbs of the definition of "Change Event" for the duration of the EMA and the Franchisee shall not raise a claim for ICWC Change that arises from the impact of COVID-19 for the duration of the EMA.
- 12.3 Any Change Event that arises during the EMA and does not relate to the impacts of COVID-19 during the EMA shall be evaluated in accordance with the provisions in Schedule 9A (Changes and Variations) of the Franchise Agreement after the expiry of the EMA.
- 12.4 In relation to Change Events triggered before the EMA:
- (a) the processing of the ICWC Change shall continue and be treated on the terms of the Franchise Agreement that existed before the entry into this EMA, taking into account the fact that the EMA has been in place since the execution of this EMA;
  - (b) any payments in respect of the relevant ICWC Change that are agreed or determined in accordance with that process shall be made as and when determined; and
  - (c) notwithstanding clauses 12.4(a) and (b), any Estimated Revisions shall cease, and shall not be payable, from 1 March 2020 until the expiry of the EMA.

**13. PERFORMANCE BENCHMARKS**

- 13.1 Where the Franchisee's performance in the Reporting Periods prior to the EMA results in a breach or is at "default level", this shall be disregarded for the duration of the EMA and the Secretary of State shall determine (acting in its absolute discretion) the course of action, after the expiry of the EMA.
- 13.2 Any course of action determined by the Secretary of State in accordance in clause 13.1 shall in no circumstances be more advantageous to the Secretary of State than the position prior to the EMA.

**14. RELEVANT OBLIGATIONS**

14.1 Following execution of this EMA, the Parties shall within thirty (30) Weekdays of the EMA Start Date, meet and consider, acting reasonably and in good faith, whether the completion of Committed Obligations, Franchise Specific Obligations and the provisions of Schedule 13.3A (Mobile Communications Service) (together, in this clause 14 the "**Relevant Obligations**") will be:

- (a) continued "as is";
- (b) delayed;
- (c) suspended; or
- (d) reduced in scope or application.

14.2 In the event that the Relevant Obligation involves EMA Capital Expenditure the default assumption will be that the Relevant Obligation shall continue unaffected during the period of the EMA.

14.3 In the event the Parties are unable to agree the approach to completion of a Relevant Obligation within sixty (60) Weekdays of the EMA Start Date, the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the approach.

14.4 If a delay, suspension or reduction agreed or determined in accordance with this clause 14 is such that it is reasonably likely to have an impact on the Franchisee's financial position or performance of the relevant obligation following the expiry of the EMA, then the Parties will also agree (or if they are unable to agree, the Secretary of State will reasonably determine) how that impact will be addressed (whether by way of a Variation or some other mechanism).

**15. COVID-19 RELATED SUPPORT**

15.1 The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to avail itself of, including applying for, any UK Government support that is offered in relation to the impact of COVID-19, including for example tax relief.

15.2 To the extent the Franchisee is successful in receiving such support, this shall be taken into account in relation to the application of the mechanisms in Schedule 8A(EMA) of the Franchise Agreement, as set out in Appendix 2 to 0 to this EMA, such that the Franchisee does not benefit from double recovery.

**16. STATE AID**

16.1 The Franchisee acknowledges and agrees that the EMA must not result in any financial advantage being granted to Franchisee that is incompatible with the EU rules on State aid and, in particular, Articles 107 and 108 of the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union. In that regard, it is noted in particular that the replacement Schedule 8A(EMA) of the Franchise Agreement defines the parameters on the basis of which the compensation payment for discharging the public service obligations is to be calculated. In accordance with Articles 4(1) and 6(1) of Regulation (EC) N° 1370/2007 of 23 October 2007 on public passenger transport services by rail and by road, these parameters have been determined in such a way that no compensation payment may exceed the amount required to cover the net financial effect on costs incurred and revenues generated in discharging the public service obligations, taking account of revenue relating thereto kept by the Train Operator and a reasonable profit. At the end of the EMA, the Secretary of State will carry out an ex-post check to ensure that there has been no overcompensation for the discharge of the public service obligations over the duration of the EMA. The Secretary of State will recover – in accordance with the EU State aid rules - any overcompensation in relation to the

provision of the management role over the duration of the EMA or any other financial advantage that is identified as having been granted as a result of the EMA in violation of the EU State aid rules, whether such overcompensation or other advantage has been identified by the Secretary of State or by the European Commission and the Franchisee agrees to repay such monies promptly.

#### 17. EXPIRY OF THE EMA – RECALIBRATION ITEMS

- 17.1 The Parties shall, at least forty (40) Weekdays before the anticipated expiry of the EMA, meet (either in person or remotely) and with both Parties acting reasonably and in good faith, seek to agree the recalibration required to the Recalibration Items.
- 17.2 The sole factor to be considered in recalibrating the Recalibration Items shall be the fact that an alternative contractual regime has applied for the duration of the EMA and no other factor shall be taken into account.

#### 18. WARRANTIES

- 18.1 The Franchisee shall, within ten (10) Weekdays of the execution of this EMA, provide a warranty in writing, from a statutory director of the Franchisee to the Secretary of State confirming that:
- (a) the budget submitted by the Franchisee prior to the EMA Start Date is a true and valid reflection of the budget assumed by the Franchisee at 1 March 2020; and
  - (b) in the preparation of such budget, no measures have been undertaken to:
    - (i) suppress revenue and/or increase costs during the term of the EMA;
    - (ii) reallocate costs to, or revenues from the period when the EMA is in place; or
    - (iii) act in a way that is contrary to the principles of the EMA by using the existence or cessation of the EMA to increase profitability.

#### 19. ENTIRE AGREEMENT

- 19.1 This EMA contains all the terms which the Parties have agreed in relation to the subject matter of this EMA and supersedes any prior written or oral agreements, representations or understandings between the Parties in relation to such subject matter.
- 19.2 The Franchisee acknowledges that this EMA has not been entered into wholly or partly in reliance on, nor has the Franchisee been given any warranty, statement, promise or representation other than as expressly set out in this EMA. To the extent that any such warranties, statements, promises or representations have been given the Franchisee unconditionally and irrevocably waives any claims, rights or remedies which it might otherwise have had in relation to them.
- 19.3 Nothing in this clause 0 shall exclude any liability which one Party would otherwise have to the other Party in respect of any statements made fraudulently.

#### 20. COUNTERPARTS

This EMA may be executed in any number of counterparts all of which when taken together shall constitute one and the same instrument.

21. **COSTS**

Each Party shall bear its own legal, accountancy and other costs and expenses incurred in connection with the preparation, execution and implementation of this EMA and all documents ancillary to it.

22. **GOVERNING LAW**

This EMA (and any non-contractual obligations arising out of or in connection with it) shall be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of England and Wales and the Parties irrevocably agree that the courts of England and Wales are to have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any disputes which may arise out of or in connection with this EMA except as specified to the contrary.

23. **RIGHTS OF THIRD PARTIES**

No person who is not a Party to this EMA shall have any right under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 to enforce any of its terms.

**IN WITNESS** whereof the Parties have executed this EMA the day and year first before written:

SIGNED FOR AND ON BEHALF OF  
**The Secretary of State for Transport**

) [REDACTED<sup>1</sup>]  
)  
)

Print Name of Authorised Signatory: [REDACTED]

Position: [REDACTED]

SIGNED FOR AND ON BEHALF OF  
**First Trenitalia West Coast Rail Limited**

) [REDACTED<sup>2</sup>]  
)  
)

Print Name of Director/Authorised Signatory: [REDACTED]

Position: [REDACTED]

Withdrawn March 2024

<sup>1</sup> 29 May 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<sup>2</sup> 29 May 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

**SCHEDULE 1**

**Amendments to the Franchise Agreement**

The Franchise Agreement shall be amended as set out in the table below.

For the avoidance of doubt:

- any reference to "N/A" in the table below shall mean that the existing Schedule remains unamended and continues to apply;
- any text that appears in blue and is underlined shall be added to existing clauses / paragraphs / Schedules; and
- any text that appears in blue and is struck-out shall be deleted from existing clauses / paragraphs / Schedules.

REFERENCE (CLAUSE / PARAGRAPH / SCHEDULE)	AMENDMENT
<b>Main Body</b>	
1 – Interpretation	<p>The following new subclause (ab) shall be inserted at the end of clause 1.1:</p> <p><u>"(ab) a reference to a sum being calculated in accordance with Schedule 8.1A or 8.2A (including references to RPI having the meaning given in Schedule 8.1A or 8.2A, or references to amounts or costs being varied or indexed as amounts or costs are indexed in Schedule 8.1A or Schedule 8.2A) shall be interpreted as a reference to Schedule 8.1A and 8.2A in the form which applied immediately prior to the EMA Start Date."</u></p> <p>The full stop at the end of clause 1.1(aa) shall be deleted and replaced with "<u>: and</u>".</p> <p>The word "and" at the end of clause 1.1(z) shall be deleted.</p>

<p>3 – Definitions</p>	<p>The following new definitions shall be inserted into clause 3.1:</p> <p><b><u>"COVID-19"</u></b> <i>means the coronavirus disease 2019;</i></p> <p><b><u>"EMA"</u></b> <i>means the Emergency Measures Agreement entered into by the Parties on or around 1 April 2020 to deal with the impacts of COVID-19;</i></p> <p><b><u>"Initial Budget"</u></b> <i>means the Budget (as defined in Schedule 8A(EMA) to be agreed between the Parties within 10 Weekdays of the EMA Start Date or, if the Parties are unable to agree, as reasonably determined by the Secretary of State;</i></p> <p>The following existing definitions shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><b><u>"Franchise Payment"</u></b> <i>means:</i></p> <p>(a) <i>in relation to any Reporting Period during the ICWC Period, the amount determined in accordance with the provisions of <del>paragraph 1.1 of</del> Schedule 8.1A(EMA) (Franchise Payments); and</i></p> <p>(b) <i>in relation to any Reporting Period during the Integrated Operator Period, the amount determined in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 8.1B (Franchise Payments);</i></p>
------------------------	--

	<p><b>"Payment Date"</b></p> <p><i>means the relevant date for the payment of Franchise Payments as set out in:</i></p> <p>(a) <i>paragraph <del>2.3</del> <a href="#">3.3</a> of Schedule <del>8.1A(EMA)</del> (Franchise Payments); or</i></p> <p>(b) <i>paragraph 2.3 of Schedule 8.1B (Franchise Payments);</i></p>
--	---

Withdrawn March 2014

<p>11 – Dispute Resolution Procedure</p>	<p>Clause 11.3 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p>The Parties shall comply with the terms of paragraph <del>4 3.7</del> of Schedule <del>8.1A(EMA)</del> (Franchise Payments) and paragraph 2.8 of Schedule 8.1B (Franchise Payments) of this Agreement.</p>
<p>16 – Entire Agreement</p>	<p>Clause 16.1 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><i>"This Agreement contains the entire agreement between the Parties, <u>except as amended</u>, in relation to the subject matter of the Franchise Agreement and supersede all prior agreements and arrangements between the Parties other than any confidentiality agreements or undertakings which the Franchisee may have entered into with the Secretary of State in connection with the Secretary of State's proposal to secure the provision of the Passenger Services under the Franchise Agreement."</i></p>
<p><b>Schedule 1A: Passenger Service Obligations</b></p>	
<p>1.1A – Franchisee Services and Service Development</p>	<p>Schedule 1A shall be replaced with the new Schedule 1A attached at Appendix 1.</p>
<p>1.2A – Operating Obligations</p>	
<p>1.3A – NOT USED</p>	
<p>1.4A – Passenger Facing Obligations</p>	
<p>1.5A – Information about Passengers</p>	
<p>1.6A – The Rolling Stock</p>	
<p>1.7A – Stations</p>	
<p><b>Schedule 2A: Assets, Leases, Other Franchisees and Schemes</b></p>	
<p>2.1A – Asset Vesting and Transfer</p>	<p>N/A</p>

2.2A – Security of Access Agreements, Rolling Stock Leases, Station and Depot Leases	N/A
2.3A – Other Franchisees	N/A
2.4A – Not Used	N/A
2.5A – Transport, Travel and Other Schemes	N/A
<b>Schedule 3A: Not Used</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 4A: Accessibility and Inclusivity</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 5A: Fares and Smart Ticketing</b>	
5.1A – Purpose, Structure and Construction	N/A
5.2A – Franchisee's Obligations to Create Fares	N/A
5.3A – Allocation of Fares to Fares Baskets	N/A
5.4A – Regulation of Fares Basket Values	N/A
5.5A – Regulation of Individual Fares	N/A
5.6A – Exceeding the Regulated Value, Regulated Price or Regulated Child Price	N/A
5.7A – Changes to Fares and Fares Regulation	N/A

5.8A – Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring	N/A
5.9A – Smart Ticketing	N/A
<b>Schedule 6A: Franchise Specific Obligations and Committed Obligations</b>	
6.1A – Franchise Specific Obligations	N/A
6.2A – Committed Obligations	N/A
6.3A –Contractual Incentive Mitigations	N/A
6.4A – Alliances	N/A
<b>Schedule 7A: Performance Benchmarks</b>	
7.1A – Operational Performance	The text in paragraph 18 shall be deleted and replaced with " <a href="#">not used</a> ".  The text in paragraphs 26 and 27 shall be deleted and replaced with " <a href="#">not used</a> ".
7.2A – Customer Experience and Engagement	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 7.2A shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the EMA.
7.3A – Service Quality Regime	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 7.3A shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the EMA.
<b>Schedule 8A: Payments</b>	
8.1A – Franchise Payments	Schedule 8.1A shall be replaced with (together):  (i) the new Schedule 8A(EMA) attached at Appendix 2; and  (ii) the new Schedule 8.8A attached at Appendix 3.
8.2A – Profit Share Mechanism	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 8.2A shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the EMA.

8.3A – Track Access Adjustments and Station Charge Adjustments	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 8.3A shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the EMA.
8.4A – GDP Adjustment Payments	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 8.4A shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the EMA.
8.5A – Not Used	
8.6A – Forecast Revenue Mechanism	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 8.6A shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the EMA.
8.7A – Resetting	N/A
<b>Schedule 9A: Changes and Variations</b>	
9.1A – Financial and Other Consequences of ICWC Change	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 9.1A shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the EMA. For the avoidance of doubt, Schedule 9B shall apply.
9.2A – Identity of the ICWC Financial Model (Escrow Documents )	N/A
9.3A – Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes	N/A
9.4A – Secretary of State Risk Assumption	For the avoidance of doubt, Schedule 9.4A shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the EMA.
9.5A – Not Used	
<b>Schedule 10A: Remedies, Events of Default and Termination Events</b>	
10.1A – Procedure for Remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement	<p>Paragraph 2 shall be deleted and replaced with the following new paragraph:</p> <p><i><u>"If:</u></i></p> <p><i><u>(a) the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Franchisee is operating at a level that would, or would likely, be scored "1"; or</u></i></p>

	<p><u>(b) the Franchisee has received a score of "1",</u></p> <p><u>in relation to any of the EMA Criteria, for a particular EMA Performance Period, in accordance with the EMA Review process set out in Schedule 8.8A the Secretary of State may serve a notice on the Franchisee requiring it to address and overcome the shortfalls or failures that have led to the Franchisee receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of "1" with respect to the relevant EMA Criterion (a "Remedial Plan Notice")."</u></p> <p>Paragraph 3.1(a) shall be deleted and replaced with the following new paragraph:</p> <p><u>(a) the specific EMA Criterion under the EMA Review Scorecard that the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Franchisee is likely to score, or has scored, "1" in ("Relevant Term"); and</u></p> <p>Paragraph 4.2(b) shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><b>"4.2 Each Remedial Plan shall set out:</b></p> <p>(a) <i>the Relevant Term which has caused such Remedial Plan to be required;</i></p> <p>(b) <i>an explanation of the reasons for the <u>Franchisee receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of "1" with respect to</u> <del>contravention or likely contravention of</del> the Relevant Term;</i></p> <p>(c) <i>the steps proposed for the purposes of <u>addressing and overcoming the shortfalls or failures that have led to the Franchisee receiving, or being likely to receive, a score of "1" with respect to the Relevant Term</u> <del>securing or facilitating compliance with the Relevant Term;</del> and</i></p> <p>(d) <i>the time period within which the Franchisee proposes to implement those steps."</i></p>
<p>10.2A – Events of Default and Termination Events</p>	<p>The text in paragraph 1.6 shall be deleted and replaced with "<u>not used</u>".</p> <p>The text in paragraph 1.8 shall be deleted and replaced with "<u>not used</u>".</p> <p>A new paragraph 1.18 shall be inserted as follows:</p>

	<p><b><u>1.18 Disallowable Costs</u></b></p> <p><u>The Franchisee's Disallowable Costs exceed the maximum value for Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities as specified in paragraph 5.8A of Schedule 8A(EMA) to this Agreement.</u></p>
10.3A – Force Majeure and Business Continuity	<p>Paragraph 1(e)(iii) shall be amended by replacing the word "and" with "or".</p> <p>Paragraph 1(e) shall be amended by inserting a new paragraph as follows:</p> <p><u>"(iv) for the duration of the EMA, the occurrence and impact, whether direct or indirect, of COVID-19; and"</u></p> <p>Paragraph 1 shall be amended by inserting the following text at the end of the paragraph:</p> <p><u>"The definition of "Force Majeure Event" shall for the duration of the EMA exclude the occurrence and impact, whether direct or indirect, of COVID-19."</u></p> <p>Paragraph 3 shall be amended by inserting the following new paragraph:</p> <p><u>"3.4 Notwithstanding any other provision of this Agreement, the Franchisee agrees that it shall not for the duration of the EMA be entitled to further relief from obligations pursuant to the Force Majeure provisions under this Schedule 10.3A as a direct or indirect impact of COVID-19."</u></p>
10.4A – Liability	N/A
<b>Schedule 11A: Franchise Performance Meetings and Management Information</b>	
11.1A – Franchise Performance Meetings	N/A
11.2A – Management Information	Schedule 11.2A shall be replaced with the new Schedule 11.2A attached at Appendix 4.
<b>11.3A – ICWC Annual Review</b>	
11.3A – ICWC Annual Review	Unless otherwise instructed by the Secretary of State, Schedule 11.3A shall <b>not</b> apply for the duration of the EMA.

Schedule 12A: Financial Covenants and Bonds	
Financial Covenants and Bonds	<p>Paragraph 1 shall be amended by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>deleting the word "or" at the end of paragraph (c)</li> <li>amending subparagraph (d) as follows:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"(d) create or acquire any subsidiary or make or have any investment in any other entity, except for the deposit of cash with a Bank, or"</li> </ul> </li> <li>inserting a new subparagraph (e) as follows:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"(e) borrow any sum, or enter into any loan or lending agreement for the purpose of borrowing from any person."</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Paragraph 2 shall be deleted and replaced with "not used".</p> <p>Paragraph 3.2 shall be replaced with the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"3.2 <b>"Lock-up Period"</b> means the period commencing on the EMA Start Date and expiring on the date which the Secretary of State confirms by notice in writing to the Franchisee that:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the Secretary of State considers that all the obligations of the Parties to account to each other pursuant to Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) have been fully performed and discharged (such confirmation not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed); and</li> <li>(b) by virtue of such notice, the Lock-Up Period has expired.</li> </ul>                             No such notice shall constitute a waiver of any rights which the Secretary of State may have under or in respect of Schedule 8A(EMA)."</li> </ul> <p>Paragraph 3.3 shall be deleted and replaced with "not used".</p> <p>A new paragraph 3A shall be added as follows:</p>

	<p>"3A The Franchisee shall use reasonable endeavours to plan its business activities and working capital position such that the Forecast Closing Cash Position as does not fall below the Floor Cash Position."</p> <p>Paragraph 4.3(c) shall be amended by inserting the following text at the end of the subparagraph:</p> <p>"The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Franchisee shall under no circumstances be entitled to reimbursement, pursuant to Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) or otherwise, in respect of any additional costs or expenses incurred by the Franchisee in procuring any new Performance Bond where required to do so pursuant to this paragraph 4.3(c)."</p> <p>Paragraph 4.5(a)(i)(A) shall be amended as follows:</p> <p>"either terminated or expired and, in either case, in circumstances where there are liabilities or obligations outstanding from the Franchisee to the Secretary of State including where the Franchise Period has terminated or expired but provisions of the Franchise Agreement remain in operation and effect (including Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments)); and/or</p> <p>The subparagraphs in paragraph 4.5(b) shall be amended as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"(i) early termination of the Franchise Agreement; and/or</li> <li>(ii) termination of the Shadow Operator Services prior to the High Speed Established Services Date; and/or</li> <li>(iii) any failure by the Franchisee to perform or comply with any of its obligations to the Secretary of State under the Franchise Agreement or to a Successor Operator under the Supplemental Agreement; and/or</li> <li>(iv) any change and/or variation which is required to the terms of the Development Agreement (including any requirement for the Secretary of State to pay additional sums or make additional funds available to HS2 Limited) directly caused by the early termination of the Shadow Operator Services,</li> </ul> <p>and which are not otherwise recovered by the Secretary of State, <del>(including pursuant to Clause 7.4 of the Funding Deed). To the extent that the Secretary of State accounts to the Franchisee pursuant to this paragraph, the Franchisee shall procure that an amount equal to the amount</del></p>
--	---

	<p><del>so paid shall thereupon become re-drawable under the Performance Bond (in accordance with its terms) with immediate effect.</del></p> <p>(v) without prejudice to the generality of paragraph 4.5(b)(i), any of the following amounts which (a), in respect of any Performance Year, the Secretary of State has not offset against MFPP in accordance with paragraph 11 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments); or (b) which are not taken into account in any payment received by the Secretary of State pursuant to the Funding Deed:</p> <p>(A) SoS Claims; and</p> <p>(B) any other sums which the Secretary of State has the right in accordance with Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) to offset against MFPP; and/or</p> <p>(vi) any amount of the Final Working Capital Adjustment not paid to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 10.4 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments).</p> <p>To the extent that the Secretary of State accounts to the Franchisee pursuant to this paragraph, the Franchisee shall procure that an amount equal to the amount so paid shall thereupon become re-drawable under the Performance Bond (in accordance with its terms) with immediate effect."</p> <p>In paragraph 4.5(c), the reference to Schedule 8A shall be deleted and replaced with amended to "Schedule 8A(EMA)".</p> <p>A new subparagraph 4.5(f) shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p>"The Parties acknowledge and agree that the Franchisee shall under no circumstances be entitled to reimbursement, pursuant to Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) or otherwise, of any losses, liabilities, costs or expenses incurred by the Franchisee arising out of or in connection with any lawful demand made by the Secretary of State under the Performance Bond pursuant to this paragraph 4."</p> <p>A new paragraph 7 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><b>"7. Survival</b></p>
--	--

	For the avoidance of doubt this Schedule 12A and any other provisions of the Franchise Agreement reasonably required for the purpose of giving this Schedule full effect shall survive the termination or expiry of the Franchise Term (however arising) and continue in full force and effect in accordance with its terms.
<b>Schedule 13A: Rail Industry Initiatives and Innovation Obligations</b>	
13.1A – Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation	N/A
13.2A – Innovation Obligations	N/A
13.3A – Mobile Communications Service	N/A
<b>Schedule 14A: Preservation of Assets</b>	
14.1A – Maintenance of Franchisee	N/A
14.2A – Maintenance of Operating Assets and Branding	N/A
14.3A – Key Contracts	N/A
14.4A – Designation of Franchise Assets	N/A
14.5A – Dealing with Franchise Assets	N/A
14.6A –Residual Value Mechanism	N/A
14.7A –Incentivising Long Term Investment	N/A
<b>Schedule 15A: Obligations Associated with Termination</b>	
15.1A – Reletting Provisions	N/A

<p>15.2A – Last 12 or 13 months of the ICWC Period and Other Conduct of Business Provisions</p>	<p>A new paragraph 1.3 shall be inserted as follows:</p> <p><b><u>"1.3 EMA Period</u></b></p> <p><u>Notwithstanding paragraphs 1.1 and 1.2 above, the Parties agree that paragraphs 2 to 8 of this Schedule 15.2A shall apply for the duration of the EMA".</u></p> <p>Paragraph 2.1(a) shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><i>"(a) takes effect <u>during the term of the EMA or</u> in the last twelve (12) months of the ICWC Period unless it is in the ordinary course of business and, when aggregated with any other variation or addition which takes effect during such period, represents an increase in the remuneration of a Franchise Employee of no more than the amount determined in accordance with the following formula:"</i></p> <p>The last paragraph in 2.1 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><i>"It is agreed that the Franchisee shall be permitted to make a decrease in the remuneration of any Franchise Employee that takes effect <u>during the term of the EMA or</u> in the last twelve (12) months of the ICWC Period without first obtaining the consent of the Secretary of State in circumstances where such decrease is in the ordinary course of business and when aggregated with any other variation which takes effect during such period, represents a decrease in the remuneration of a Franchise Employee of no more than the amount determined in accordance with the formula contained in paragraph 2.1(a) where a calculation pursuant to such formula gives rise to a negative percentage. In any other circumstances the prior consent of the Secretary of State will be required to any decrease in the remuneration of a Franchise Employee <u>during the term of the EMA or</u> in the last twelve (12) months of the ICWC Period."</i></p> <p>Paragraph 4.1 shall be amended as follows:</p> <p><i>"Subject to and excluding any increase in the remuneration of Franchise Employees permitted under paragraph 2.1, the Franchisee shall not, and shall secure that each other relevant employer shall not, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State (which shall not be unreasonably withheld) increase or decrease <u>during the term of the EMA or</u> in the last twelve (12) months of the ICWC Period the number of Franchise Employees such that:</i></p>
---	---

	<p>(a) the total number of Franchise Employees or the total cost per annum to the Franchisee and each other relevant employer of employing all Franchise Employees is increased; or</p> <p>(b) the total number of Franchise Employees is decreased,</p> <p>in each case, by more than one per cent (1%) during such <u>term of the EMA or</u> period of twelve (12) months provided that where the last twelve (12) or thirteen (13) months of the ICWC Period has been deemed to have commenced under paragraph 1.1 and the period of the restriction contemplated by this paragraph 4 lasts longer than twelve (12) months such restriction shall apply in respect of the longer period."</p> <p>Paragraph 5.1(a) shall be amended as follows:</p> <p>"(a) During <u>the term of the EMA or</u> the last thirteen (13) months of the ICWC Period the Franchisee shall not, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State (not to be unreasonably withheld), set the Price or Child Price of or sell (except to the extent required to do so under the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement as a result of the Price or Child Price of a Fare being set by another person) any Fare which would entitle the purchaser of such Fare to travel on all or any of the Passenger Services after the <u>term of the EMA or the ICWC Period (as applicable)</u> for an amount which is less than the Price or the Child Price of that Fare immediately before the commencement of <u>the term of the EMA or</u> such thirteen (13) month period <u>(as applicable)</u> or, in the case of a new Fare, the Price of its nearest equivalent immediately before the commencement of such period."</p> <p>Paragraph 5.1(b)(i) shall be amended as follows:</p> <p>"(i) presenting a Discount Card (or any equivalent replacement thereof) issued by the Franchisee before the commencement of <u>the term of the EMA or</u> such thirteen (13) month period and to which the purchaser would have been entitled before the commencement of such period;"</p> <p>Paragraph 5.2(a) and (b) shall be amended by inserting the words "<u>during the term of the EMA or</u>." before the words "in the last thirteen (13) Reporting Periods".</p> <p>Paragraph 6.1 shall be amended by inserting the words "<u>during the term of the EMA or</u>" before the words "during the last twelve (12) months".</p>
15.3A – Handover Package	N/A

15.4A – Provisions Applying on and After Termination	N/A
<b>Schedule 16A: Pensions</b>	
16.1A – Railways Pension Scheme	In paragraphs 6.4 and 6.5, the reference to "Schedule 8A (Payments)" shall be deleted and replaced with "Schedule <a href="#">8A(EMA)</a> (Franchise Payments)"
16.A2 – Deficit Contribution Risk Sharing	[REDACTED <sup>3</sup> ]
<b>Schedule 17A: Confidentiality, Freedom of Information and Data Protection</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 1B: Passenger Service Obligations</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 2B: Assets, Leases, Other Franchisees and Schemes</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 3A: Not Used</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 4B: Accessibility and Inclusivity</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 5B: Fares</b>	
-	N/A

<sup>3</sup> 29 May 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

<b>Schedule 6B: Franchise Specific Obligations and Committed Obligations</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 7B: IOC Performance Benchmarks</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 8B: Payments</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 9B: Changes and Variations</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 10B: Remedies, Events of Default and Termination Events</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 11B: Franchise Performance Meetings and Management Information</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 12B: Financial Covenants and Bonds</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 13B: Rail Industry Initiatives and Innovation Obligations</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 14B: Preservation of Assets</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 15B: Obligations Associated with Termination</b>	

-	N/A
<b>Schedule 16B: Pensions</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 17B: Confidentiality and Freedom of Information</b>	
-	N/A
<b>Schedule 18: Shadow Operator</b>	
Schedule 18.1 – Shadow Operations	N/A
Schedule 18.2 – Accepted Programme Specific Requirements	N/A
Schedule 18.3 – Transitional Programme Specific Requirements	N/A
Schedule 18.4 – Shadow Operator Annual Review	N/A
Schedule 18.5 – Shadow Operator Payments	A new paragraph 1.5 shall be inserted as follows:  <u><a href="#">1.5 During the term of the EMA, ShOpP shall be payable on the first Weekday of the Reporting Period following the Reporting Period in respect of which ShOpP has been calculated.</a></u>
<b>Schedule 19: Readiness Review, Switch Review and High Speed Services Review</b>	
Schedule 19.1 – Readiness Review	A new paragraph 3.1(bb) shall be inserted after paragraph 3.1 (b) as follows:  <u><a href="#">(bb) the scores awarded against each EMA Criterion in any EMA Reviews falling within the preceding 5 years (“EMA Readiness Review Scores”);</a></u>

	A new paragraph 4.1(bb) shall be inserted after paragraph 4.1(b) as follows:  <u><i>(bb) the mean average of all EMA Readiness Review Scores is equal to or greater than 2;</i></u>
<b>Schedule 20: IOC Confirmable Obligations</b>	
-	N/A

Withdrawn March 2024

Appendix 1 to Schedule 1

Schedule 1A (Passenger Service Obligations)

SCHEDULE 1A

PASSENGER SERVICE OBLIGATIONS

Schedule 1.1A:	Franchise Services and Service Development
	Part 1 – Franchise Services
	Part 2 – Service Development
Schedule 1.2A:	Operating Obligations
Schedule 1.3A:	<b>NOT USED</b>
Schedule 1.4A:	Passenger Facing Obligations
Schedule 1.5A:	Information about Passengers
Schedule 1.6A:	The Rolling Stock
	Appendix 1: The Composition of the Train Fleet
Schedule 1.7A:	Stations
	Appendix 1: List of Secure Stations Accreditation and Secure Car Parks Accreditation
	Appendix 2: Information about Station Improvement Measures
	Appendix 3: <b>NOT USED</b>
	Appendix 4: <b>NOT USED</b>

Withdrawn March 2024

**SCHEDULE 1.1A**

**Franchise Services and Service Development**

**Part 1 - Franchise Services**

**1. Franchise Services**

- 1.1 The Franchisee may at all times during the ICWC Term provide and operate the Franchise Services specified in this Schedule 1.1. The Franchisee is required to provide the Passenger Services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and (without prejudice to the other provisions of the Franchise Agreement) is permitted to provide other Franchise Services subject to the provisions of Part 1 of this Schedule 1.1. The Franchisee is also required to provide the Shadow Operator Services in accordance with the provisions of Schedule 18 (Shadow Operator).
- 1.2 The Franchisee shall not directly or indirectly, without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State, carry on any business or activity other than the provision and operation of the Franchise Services.
- 1.3 Nothing in this Schedule 1.1 shall restrict any Affiliate of the Franchisee from having an interest in or participating in any business or activity.
- 1.4 The Franchisee shall not engage any Franchise Employee in any activity or business which it may not conduct or engage in under this Schedule 1.1.

**2. Station Services**

- 2.1 The Station Services shall comprise:
  - (a) the provision of any services to persons at Stations or to Train Operators whose trains call at such Stations, provided that such services:
    - (i) are made available only or principally to passengers alighting from or joining trains calling at such Stations and to such Train Operators;
    - (ii) are provided in connection with the calling of trains at such Stations and are not designed to encourage passengers or other persons to use such Station Services other than in connection with a journey on a train calling at such Stations;
    - (iii) exclude the sale or issue (for a charge) of any goods other than passenger timetables and any items included in the price of a Fare; and
    - (iv) may include the provision of car parking spaces; and
  - (b) the provision of access to any person under an Access Agreement at any Station.
- 2.2 The Station Services shall include the provision of any service which the Franchisee may provide, or may be required to provide, under any Access Agreement in effect on the Start Date or as lawfully directed by the ORR from time to time.

**3. Light Maintenance Services**

- 3.1 Light Maintenance Services shall comprise:
  - (a) the provision of access to any other person under an Access Agreement;
  - (b) the carrying out of inspections of rolling stock vehicles;
  - (c) the carrying out of maintenance work on rolling stock vehicles of a kind which is normally carried out at regular intervals of twelve (12) months or less;
  - (d) the replacement of failed components and consumables on rolling stock vehicles;
  - (e) the preparation of rolling stock vehicles for service;

- (f) the stabling or other temporary holding of rolling stock vehicles;
- (g) the refuelling of rolling stock vehicles;
- (h) the emptying of retention tanks fitted to rolling stock vehicles equipped with Controlled Emission Toilets;
- (i) the replenishment of water tanks; and
- (j) the cleaning of the exterior or the interior of rolling stock vehicles,

in each case for itself and/or other Train Operators, at any Station or Depot.

3.2 Light Maintenance Services shall include the provision of any service which the Franchisee may provide, or may be required to provide, under any Access Agreement in effect on the Start Date or as lawfully directed by the ORR from time to time.

#### 4. Ancillary Services

4.1 The Franchisee may carry out the following Ancillary Services:

- (a) the selling, lending or hiring of any goods or rights and the provision of any services (whether for a charge or not) on any train used in the provision of the Passenger Services where such goods or services are sold or provided principally for consumption or use on the relevant train, including the sale of any Fares, meals, light refreshments, newspapers, magazines, books, entertainment materials information or materials targeted at tourists and other leisure passengers (such as maps) or phone cards;
- (b) the provision of any service at any station which, if provided on a train used in the provision of the Passenger Services, would fall within paragraph 4.1(a) or which, if provided at a Station, would fall within paragraph 2 and which, in each case, is made available only or principally to persons at such stations who either are about to travel or have recently travelled on a train used in the provision of the Passenger Services;
- (c) NOT USED;
- (d) NOT USED;
- (e) NOT USED;
- (f) the selling at any location of any Fare which is valid, in whole or in part, on the Passenger Services and the selling of any other Fare at any location where such Fares may be purchased from the Franchisee on or before the date of the Franchise Agreement or at any other location, provided that the majority of Fares sold at any such other location shall be Fares which are valid, in whole or in part, on the Passenger Services;
- (g) the selling, in conjunction with any Fare, of any other rights which entitle the purchaser thereof to:
  - (i) travel on any other train or light rail service;
  - (ii) travel on any aircraft;
  - (iii) travel on any shipping or ferry service;
  - (iv) travel on any bus; or
  - (v) attend any event or attraction or enter any location;
- (h) the lending, seconding, hiring or contracting out of Franchise Employees to other Train Operators in order to enable such Train Operators to provide services at the Stations to passengers travelling on any such operator's trains;

- (i) the provision of information relating to railway passenger services within Great Britain to passengers through telephone, internet, mobile data services or other appropriate means;
- (j) the supervision, management and training of train crew of other Train Operators provided such activity is necessarily incidental to the provision of the Passenger Services and could not reasonably be carried out by or through an Affiliate of the Franchisee;
- (k) NOT USED;
- (l) the licensing or permitting of any other person (including an Affiliate of the Franchisee) to carry out any activity or business, in connection with the provision of the Franchise Services, or otherwise, on any rolling stock vehicle operated by the Franchisee, at any station served by the Passenger Services, at any Depot, or otherwise (including the letting, leasing or licensing (on an exclusive basis or otherwise) of any part or all of a Station or Depot to such other person);
- (m) such other activity or business as may be reasonably necessary for the purpose of providing any other Franchise Services or complying with the Franchise Agreement, provided that it could not reasonably be carried out by or through an Affiliate of the Franchisee;
- (n) the subleasing to any other person of the following property which is not comprised in a Station or Depot:  
  
None
- (o) the provision or operation of Charter Services, subject to the Planned Train Mileage of such Charter Services not exceeding in any Reporting Period two per cent (2%) of the Planned Train Mileage of Passenger Services provided by the Franchisee in such Reporting Period;
- (p) the provision of consultancy services reasonably ancillary to the provision of the other Franchise Services; and
- (q) any services or activity not falling within paragraphs 2, 3, 4.1(a) to 4.1(p) above, subject to the gross value of any such services or activity (excluding any attribution of costs) not exceeding twenty five thousand pounds (£25,000) per annum in each Franchisee Year, per item and in aggregate, two hundred and fifty thousand pounds (£250,000) per annum in each Franchisee Year provided that in the second and each subsequent Franchisee Year, these amounts will be increased by multiplying by RPI (where **RPI** is the quotient of the Retail Prices Index for the January which immediately precedes the commencement of the relevant Franchisee Year divided by the Retail Prices Index for January 2019).

4.2 The Franchisee may, and (to the extent required in order to best serve the needs of passengers on railway passenger services within Great Britain from time to time) shall use reasonable endeavours to, carry out the following Ancillary Services:

- (a) in any Reporting Period, the subleasing, hiring or licensing of up to ten per cent (10%) of the rolling stock vehicles used in the provision of the Passenger Services (such percentage to be determined by reference to the aggregate period of time for which such rolling stock vehicles are sub-let, hired or licensed and the aggregate period of time for which they are used in the provision of the Passenger Services);
- (b) the lending, seconding, hiring or contracting out during any Reporting Period to another person or persons (whether for a charge or not) of:
  - (i) up to one per cent (1%) of the number of Franchise Employees as at the Start Date, for over ninety per cent (90%) of their normal working hours during such Reporting Period (including on a full-time basis); and
  - (ii) one per cent (1%) of any other Franchise Employees as at the Start Date,

provided that this paragraph shall not apply to any employee lent, seconded, hired or contracted out under any of paragraphs 4.1(a) to 4.1(b) inclusive, paragraphs 4.1(f) to 4.1(j) inclusive, paragraphs 4.1(l) to 4.1(p) inclusive, paragraph 4.2(a) or paragraphs to 4.2(c) to 4.2 (e) inclusive or engaged in any other activity which is permitted under this Schedule 1.1A;

- (c) any heavy maintenance of rolling stock vehicles which does not fall within the Light Maintenance Services, carried out on behalf of any other person at the following Depot(s), subject to the number of persons engaged or employed in such activity not exceeding by more than ten per cent (10%) the number so engaged or employed on the Start Date:

None

- (d) the subleasing, hiring, licensing, lending, selling of any rolling stock vehicles or other assets of the Franchisee or the lending, hiring or contracting out of any employees of the Franchisee or the provision of any other services to Network Rail or any other Train Operator on an emergency basis; and
- (e) assisting altered or additional freight services to operate on the national rail network and, where appropriate, enabling certain essential goods (such as medical equipment or other urgent items) to be carried on Passenger Services.

## 5. Royal Train

- 5.1 The Franchisee shall, if and to the extent requested by any person (including DB Cargo UK Limited its successor and assigns) and subject to the payment by such person of any reasonable costs of the Franchisee, co-operate in the provision by such person of railway passenger services for Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II or any successor head of state or members of the royal family or representatives of either of them.
- 5.2 The provision of railway services for Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II or any successor head of state or members of the royal family or representatives of either of them may include:
- (a) running a “sweeper” train in front of the royal train;
- (b) having spare locomotives or other rolling stock on standby as rescue traction; and/or
- (c) carrying out security requirements or co-operating with other persons in ensuring that security requirements are carried out prior to calling at any station on the Routes.

## 6. Restrictions relating to Franchise Services

- 6.1 The Franchisee shall not without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State operate Passenger Services other than on the following routes (and, in the event of disruption, any reasonable diversionary route):
- (a) the West Coast Main Line between:
- (i) London Euston to Lichfield Trent Valley, Crewe, Preston and Glasgow Central;
- (ii) Lichfield Trent Valley to Macclesfield and Manchester Piccadilly;
- (iii) Crewe to Wilmslow and Manchester Piccadilly;
- (iv) Crewe to Chester, Wrexham General and Holyhead;
- (v) Crewe to Liverpool Lime Street;
- (vi) Preston to Blackpool North;
- (vii) Carlisle to Edinburgh;
- (viii) London Euston to Coventry, Birmingham New Street, Wolverhampton and Shrewsbury;
- (ix) Wolverhampton to Stafford; and
- (x) Birmingham New Street to Wolverhampton, Stafford, Crewe and Glasgow or Edinburgh.
- (b) any diversionary route or depot access route as set out on any certificate issued by the Network Rail Acceptance Panel from time to time for the relevant rolling stock comprised in the Train Fleet; and

(c) the following extensions to the applicable routes specified in paragraph 6.1(a):

- (i) Birmingham to Walsall;
- (ii) Shrewsbury to Chester; and
- (iii) Llandudno Junction to Llandudno.

6.2 It is acknowledged that a Passenger Service to be operated by the Franchisee on the routes specified above in paragraph 6.1 may be operated throughout the route, on part of the route or any combination of the whole or part of any two or more of the routes specified above.

6.3 The Secretary of State may impose such conditions to the Secretary of State's consent as the Secretary of State considers appropriate for the purpose of securing the continuity of the provision of the Franchise Services at the end of the ICWC Term and Franchise Term.

6.4 The Franchisee shall not during the Franchise Term, without the consent of the Secretary of State:

- (a) provide or operate any railway passenger services other than the Passenger Services or Charter Services;
- (b) operate any stations or light maintenance depots other than the Stations and Depots; or
- (c) hold shares, participations or any other interest in any other company or body corporate unless such company or body corporate is:
  - (i) Network Rail; or
  - (ii) owned directly or indirectly by another participant in the railway industry and the holding is incidental to the Franchisee's participation in an Inter-Operator Scheme or any other arrangement designed to ensure or facilitate co-operation between such participants or between any such participants and any other person.

## 7. Restrictions on Closures of Railway Passenger Services or Railway Facilities

7.1 Except to the extent that the Secretary of State agrees otherwise, the Franchisee shall not:

- (a) cease to operate;
- (b) cease to secure the operation of; or
- (c) propose to terminate the use of,

any Station (or part of a Station) or any railway passenger service over a Route where such cessation or proposal might result in a Closure.

7.2 If any procedures are commenced under Part 4 of the Railways Act 2005 in relation to a Closure, the Franchisee shall, at its own cost and to the extent so requested by the Secretary of State, take such action as the Secretary of State may require in order to enable the Secretary of State to comply with any duty imposed on the Secretary of State under Part 4 of the Railways Act 2005 in relation to such Closure.

## 8. Subcontracting any Passenger Services

8.1 Subject to paragraph 8.2, the Franchisee may not subcontract or delegate the provision of the Passenger Services without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.

8.2 The Franchisee may subcontract or delegate the provision of the Passenger Services, provided that:

- (a) the Secretary of State receives prior written notice of any such subcontracting or delegation;

- (b) the Franchisee continues to be party to all Access Agreements and Property Leases necessary to provide such Passenger Services and to enjoy all relevant access and operational rights thereunder;
- (c) the Franchisee continues to specify and control the terms and conditions (subject to the requirements of the Inter-Operator Schemes) on which such Passenger Services are to be provided, including the determination of the Price or Child Price (as the case may be) of any Fares;
- (d) the Planned Train Mileage of the Passenger Services so delegated or subcontracted does not exceed five per cent (5%) of the Planned Train Mileage of the Franchisee in any Reporting Period (provided that, if as a result of the impact of COVID-19 it is not reasonably practicable to obtain the prior written consent of the Secretary of State to a higher percentage of the Planned Train Mileage being delegated or subcontracted in advance of subcontracting or delegating the provision of such Passenger Services, the Franchisee may subcontract or delegate the provision of such Passenger Services provided that the Secretary of State receives notification of any such subcontracting or delegation); and
- (e) the Franchisee continues to perform its obligations under this Schedule 1.1 in respect of any subcontracted or delegated services.

8.3 Any such subcontracting or delegation shall not relieve the Franchisee from any of its obligations under the Franchise Agreement, including its obligations under this paragraph 8 and Schedule 14 (Preservation of Assets).

Withdrawn March 2024

**Part 2 - Service Development**

**9. Train Service Requirement - Purpose and Responsibility**

9.1 This Part 2 of Schedule 1.1 sets out the obligations of the Franchisee in relation to the acquisition of timetable development rights required for the purposes of securing a Timetable that complies with the Train Service Requirement and preparing a Train Plan consistent with the obligations of the Franchisee and the provision of appropriate levels of passenger carrying capacity. It also provides for alteration of the Train Service Requirement by the Secretary of State. The Train Service Requirement does not in any way limit the Franchisee’s obligations pursuant to paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1.

9.2 The Train Service Requirement is the minimum specification of the Passenger Services to be provided by the Franchisee during the Franchise Term.

9.3 The Train Service Requirement as at the date of the Franchise Agreement is comprised in the following, all in the agreed terms marked as follows:

- (a) TSR1 being the Train Service Requirement applicable from the Start Date until the Passenger Change Date in December 2020;
- (b) TSR2 being the Train Service Requirement applicable from the Passenger Change Date in December 2020 until the Passenger Change Date in December 2022; and
- (c) TSR3 being the Train Service Requirement applicable from the Passenger Change Date in December 2022 until the High Speed Start Date.

9.4 The Secretary of State and the Franchisee agree that the replacement of:

- (a) TSR1 by TSR2;
- (b) TSR2 by TSR3,

at the time and for the period specified in paragraph 9.3 shall not constitute a Change for the purposes of paragraph (d) of the definition of Change Event.

9.5 For the purposes of this Schedule 1.1, the Train Service Requirement shall remain in force unless and until amended or replaced pursuant to this Schedule 1.1.

9.6 The Train Service Requirement may be expressed in whole or in part at any level of generality or to any level of detail the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

**10. Train Plan**

10.1 For the purposes of this Agreement, the “Train Plan” shall be the plan (including sub-plans) prepared by the Franchisee for the operation of trains and train formations under the Timetable that best matches available capacity to Forecast Passenger Demand as amended from time to time during the Franchise Period in accordance with this Agreement.

10.2 NOT USED.

10.3 The Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State a Train Plan in respect of each Timetable in accordance with this Schedule 1.1.

10.4 In preparing any Train Plan, the Franchisee shall do so by reference to the Timetable that it envisages operating in order to comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1.

10.5 Each Train Plan shall set out for each railway passenger service in the Timetable to which it relates:

- (a) its start point and departure time;
- (b) its terminating point and arrival time;

- (c) the number and class of rolling stock vehicles allocated to each such railway passenger service;
- (d) the Passenger Carrying Capacity that each such railway passenger service, as formed, is to have; and
- (e) its Forecast Passenger Demand and, where this has been requested by the Secretary of State and is capable of calculation, Actual Passenger Demand.

10.6 A Train Plan shall be in any format that the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for this purpose.

10.7 At the Start Date, Network Rail will have issued the applicable working timetable on which the Timetable is to be based. Accordingly the Franchisee shall confirm to the Secretary of State that it intends:

- (a) to adopt, from the Start Date until the next Passenger Change Date, the Train Plan prepared by the Train Operator under the Previous Franchise Agreement; or
- (b) to prepare its own Train Plan in accordance with this Schedule 1.1,

such Train Plan shall become the document in the agreed terms marked **TP** as at the Start Date. It is acknowledged that the Train Plan in the agreed terms marked **TP** shall be replaced from time to time during the Franchise Period in accordance with the provisions of paragraph 14.4.

#### 11. Consultation on Significant Alterations to the Timetable

11.1 Notwithstanding any consultation the Secretary of State might separately undertake in respect of any amended or new draft Train Service Requirement issued pursuant to paragraph 16, the Franchisee shall where:

- (a) it intends that any future Timetable will contain Significant Alterations compared to the Timetable then in force; and
- (b) such Significant Alterations are likely to have, in the reasonable opinion of the Franchisee, a materially adverse effect on:
  - (i) the ability of passengers using any station served by the Passenger Services to make journeys relating to work or education at reasonably convenient times; and/or
  - (ii) the trading prospects of commercial enterprises located in any community in which a station served by the Passenger Services is located in consequence of it being more difficult for customers or employees to access such commercial enterprises through travel on the Passenger Services;

consult with Stakeholders who would reasonably be expected to be affected by any such Significant Alterations in relation to such proposed future Timetable.

11.2 The first Timetable to which these provisions apply is the Timetable with effect from the Passenger Change Date in May 2020.

11.3 Accordingly the Franchisee shall where the circumstances described in paragraph 11.1 apply:

- (a) as soon as reasonably practicable provide to the Secretary of State and all Stakeholders a comprehensive summary of the proposed changes from the Timetable then in force specifying the proposed Timetable changes, the reasons for them and the likely impact on passengers;
- (b) carry out the consultation in relation to such proposed changes using a reasonable range of communication channels (taking into account the scale of the proposed changes) and in a manner that can be reasonably expected to encourage responses from a broad range of affected Stakeholders;
- (c) give consultees such time as is reasonable under all the circumstances to respond (it being agreed that it shall normally be reasonable to give at least twelve (12) weeks to respond in relation to major proposed Timetable changes);
- (d) take due account of the responses of consultees;

- (e) within six (6) weeks of the close of the consultation (or such longer period as the Secretary of State may agree, such agreement not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) publish a report containing a summary of the main issues raised by respondents (including quantitative analysis of the responses received), the reasoned response of the Franchisee to them and notification of how the Franchisee shall now seek to exercise relevant Timetable Development Rights in the context of its obligation to take due account of the results of the consultation;
- (f) ensure that the published report is promptly provided to the Secretary of State and all respondents who submitted written responses to the consultation and published in a widely accessible form; and
- (g) ensure that the relevant Timetable Development Rights to implement the proposed Timetable change are not exercised prior to the publication of the report and exercise such Timetable Development Rights in the manner indicated in the report.

## 12. Timetable Development Rights

- 12.1 The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to amend and/or enter into such Access Agreements as may be necessary or desirable from time to time to obtain the timetable development rights that it requires to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and otherwise comply with its obligations under the Franchise Agreement (including under paragraph 14 and paragraph 16 of this Schedule 1.1).
- 12.2 Prior to exercising any Timetable Development Rights to secure a Timetable the Franchisee shall make an informed estimate of Forecast Passenger Demand and in doing so shall make reasonable assumptions based on available evidence (making proper use of recognised railway industry systems and forecasting tools as these may develop over the Franchise Period) with the estimate being in such format and to such level of disaggregation as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.
- 12.3 Subject to the remaining provisions of this paragraph 12, the Franchisee shall exercise its Timetable Development Rights so as to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1 in accordance with its obligations under paragraph 17 of this Schedule 1.1.
- 12.4 Where the Franchisee proposes to exercise its Timetable Development Rights so that the Timetable in force after the relevant Passenger Change Date contains Significant Alterations to that in force prior to such Passenger Change Date the Franchisee shall (without prejudice to its obligation to consult pursuant to paragraph 11) act reasonably with the intention of obtaining a Timetable which enables:
- (a) paragraph 14.1(b); and
  - (b) paragraph 14.1(c),
- of this Schedule 1.1 to be achieved in relation to each Passenger Service in the Timetable to the greatest extent reasonably practicable.
- It is agreed that in acting reasonably the Franchisee shall take full and proper account of its informed estimate of the Forecast Passenger Demand made pursuant to paragraph 12.2 above.
- 12.5 Unless the Secretary of State otherwise directs, the Franchisee shall, for the purposes of securing a Timetable that complies with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1, exercise its rights under the Network Rail Track Access Agreement (including the Network Code) to object, to make representations and to withhold consent in respect of any actual or proposed act or omission by Network Rail in relation to such agreement in respect of its Timetable Development Rights.
- 12.6 If the Secretary of State does not consider that the Franchisee has taken sufficient steps under paragraph 12.5, the Secretary of State may require the Franchisee to exercise its rights in such manner as the Secretary of State reasonably considers appropriate in the circumstances, including:
- (a) disputing any actual or proposed act or omission by Network Rail in respect of any Timetable Development Rights; and

- (b) submitting such dispute to any relevant dispute resolution arrangements or procedures and appealing against any award or determination under such arrangements or procedures, including to the ORR.

12.7 Subject to the Franchisee complying with its obligations under paragraph 12.5 above, it shall not be liable for any failure to secure a Timetable that enables the Franchisee to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1, to the extent that such failure is caused by:

- (a) the Franchisee’s Timetable Development Rights being inadequate to enable it to secure the requisite Train Slots, provided that the Franchisee has exercised and, unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, is continuing to exercise all reasonable endeavours to obtain the requisite Timetable Development Rights in accordance with paragraph 12.1 above;
- (b) Network Rail exercising its flexing rights from time to time under the Network Rail Track Access Agreement or the Network Code in respect of such Train Slots;
- (c) Network Rail exercising its other rights from time to time under the Network Rail Track Access Agreement or the Network Code; or
- (d) the exercise by the ORR of its powers pursuant to section 22C of the Act.

12.8 **TDR Amendments**

- (a) If and to the extent that the Franchisee is not able to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement as a result of it not being able to obtain the Timetable Development Rights that it requires for that purpose, the Secretary of State shall (subject to paragraphs 12.8(b) and 12.8(c) below) issue to the Franchisee amendments to the Train Service Requirement (“**TDR Amendment**”). The amendments to the Train Service Requirement contained in the TDR Amendment shall be those that the Secretary of State considers necessary for the purposes of enabling the Franchisee to secure a Timetable that is compliant with the Train Service Requirement by exercise of the Timetable Development Rights that the Franchisee does have.
- (b) The Secretary of State shall have an unfettered discretion as to whether or not to issue a TDR Amendment in circumstances where the Franchisee:
  - (i) has failed to exercise all reasonable endeavours to obtain the requisite Timetable Development Rights in accordance with paragraph 12.1; and
  - (ii) is not relieved by paragraph 12.7 above from liability for such failure to secure a Timetable that enables the Franchisee to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement.
- (c) The Franchisee shall not be relieved from its obligations to obtain a Timetable that enables the Franchisee to operate the Train Service Requirement by the issue of any TDR Amendment where the Secretary of State reasonably considers that such failure to secure a Timetable that enables the Franchisee to operate the Train Service Requirement is partly due to the default of the Franchisee in not properly complying with its obligations under the Franchise Agreement in relation to securing timetable development rights. Accordingly any TDR Amendment may be drafted so that it does not relieve the Franchisee of the obligation to comply with the Train Service Requirement to the extent that the Secretary of State determines that the failure is due to such default of the Franchisee and the Franchisee may therefore be in contravention of the Franchise Agreement.

12.9 Following issue of any TDR Amendment pursuant to paragraph 12.8 the Franchisee shall, unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, continue to use all reasonable endeavours to amend and/or enter into such Access Agreements as may be necessary or desirable from time to time to obtain the timetable development rights that it requires to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement without such TDR Amendment.

12.10 Any TDR Amendment issued pursuant to paragraph 12.8 shall:

- (a) unless otherwise required by the Secretary of State, cease to have effect on the date (if any) on which the first Timetable comes into effect after the Franchisee has obtained the Timetable Development Rights to secure a Timetable that enables it to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement without any such TDR Amendment; and
- (b) amount to a Change but only to the extent that the Franchisee makes a saving as a consequence of such TDR Amendment and provided that if such TDR Amendment has been issued in consequence of Network Rail exercising the rights referred to in paragraphs 12.7(b) or 12.7(c) there shall be no Change.

12.11 With effect from the date on which any TDR Amendment ceases to have effect in accordance with paragraph 12.10:

- (a) the Train Service Requirement without such TDR Amendment shall thereafter apply; and
- (b) where there has been a Change which is a Qualifying Change pursuant to paragraph 12.10(b) there shall be a further Change (which shall be deemed to be a Qualifying Change) to the extent necessary so as, with effect from such date, to disapply the effect of any such Qualifying Change pursuant to paragraph 12.10(b) to take into account the fact that the Franchisee will have ceased to make a saving.

### **13. Certification and Notification by Franchisee of Exercising Timetable Development Rights**

13.1 Before exercising any Timetable Development Right to bid for Train Slots, the Franchisee shall provide a certificate addressed to the Secretary of State and signed by a statutory director of the Franchisee confirming that its proposed exercise of that Timetable Development Right will be compliant with its obligation specified in paragraph 12.3.

13.2 If requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee agrees to demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State that the Franchisee's certificate referred to in paragraph 13.1 is a true and accurate confirmation of compliance with its obligation specified in paragraph 12.3.

13.3 The Franchisee shall:

- (a) keep the Secretary of State fully informed of any discussions with Network Rail in relation to the matters referred to in this Schedule 1.1 which may, in the reasonable opinion of the Franchisee, have a material impact on the ability of the Franchisee to deliver the Train Service Requirement or meet the requirements of paragraph 14 of this Schedule 1.1 through the Timetable and shall, if required to do so by the Secretary of State, supply copies of any related correspondence to the Secretary of State; and
- (b) update any notification under this paragraph 13.3 and/or certification under paragraph 13.1 as soon as reasonably practicable, if at any time it elects or is required to modify any aspect of its exercise of its Timetable Development Rights following Network Rail's proposed or actual rejection or modification of its bid or any part of it or for any other reason.

### **14. Planning to meet Target Passenger Demand**

#### **14.1 Capacity and Timetable Planning**

- (a) The Franchisee shall, in preparing its Timetable and Train Plan, unless the Secretary of State otherwise agrees, provide for at least the capacity specified in the Train Service Requirement.
- (b) The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide for Passenger Carrying Capacity on each Passenger Service that meets as a minimum the Target Passenger Demand for that Passenger Service.
- (c) The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide passengers with a reasonable expectation of a seat:
  - (i) on boarding any Off-Peak Passenger Service; and

- (ii) twenty (20) minutes after boarding (or such other time period as the Secretary of State may stipulate) on any Peak Passenger Service.

#### 14.2 Allocation of rolling stock where Franchisee unable to meet the capacity requirements

If at the time it prepares its Timetable and/or Train Plan, having exercised all reasonable endeavours, the Franchisee is unable to prepare a Timetable and/or Train Plan having the Passenger Carrying Capacity and/or meeting the reasonable expectations referred to in paragraphs 14.1(b) and 14.1(c), then the Timetable and/or the Train Plan shall specify the best allocation of Passenger Services and rolling stock vehicles to Passenger Services that is reasonably practicable with a view to:

- (a) minimising, so far as is possible, the amount by which Target Passenger Demand exceeds the provision of Passenger Carrying Capacity on the affected Passenger Services;
- (b) ensuring, so far as is possible, that such excess is not unduly concentrated on any particular Route or Passenger Service; and
- (c) minimising, so far as is possible, the extent to which passengers are required to stand:
  - (i) on boarding any Off-Peak Passenger Service; and
  - (ii) twenty (20) minutes after boarding (or such other time period as the Secretary of State may stipulate) on any Peak Passenger Service.

#### 14.3 Preparation of Timetable and Train Plan

- (a) Subject to paragraph 14.3(b), the Franchisee shall in preparing its Timetable and its Train Plan take full and proper account of its calculation of Forecast Passenger Demand and use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the Train Fleet is deployed in an optimal manner for the purposes of complying with its obligations under paragraphs 14.1 and 14.2 above.
- (b) The Franchisee shall in preparing its Timetable and Train Plan deploy the entire Train Fleet (excluding reasonable planning requirements for the allocation of Hot Standbys or other rolling stock vehicles to be out of service due to maintenance requirements, Mandatory Modifications or any other reason agreed with the Secretary of State (such agreement not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed)) in delivering the Passenger Services:
  - (i) during each Peak; and
  - (ii) at such times outside the Peak where such deployment of the entire Train Fleet is reasonably required to meet the Franchisee's obligations pursuant to paragraphs 14.1 and 14.2 above.

#### 14.4 Finalising the Train Plan

- (a) The Franchisee shall submit its proposed Train Plan to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable after Network Rail has issued the Timetable on which the Train Plan is to be based.
- (b) The Franchisee shall submit its final Train Plan to the Secretary of State prior to the commencement of the Timetable to which it relates.
- (c) The Train Plan shall be certified by a statutory director of the Franchisee as being true and accurate and including the minimum capacity specified in the Train Service Requirement.
- (d) The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State in a timely manner such rolling stock diagrams as the Secretary of State may reasonably request from time to time.

### 15. Capacity Mitigation Proposal

- 15.1 Without prejudice to the obligation of the Franchisee to include in the Train Plan the capacity specified in the Train Service Requirement, if at any time the Franchisee is unable to prepare a Timetable and/or a Train Plan which meets the requirements of paragraph 14.1 (regardless of whether the Franchisee has used all reasonable endeavours to do so), the Secretary of State may serve a notice on the Franchisee requiring it

to produce a proposal to a reasonable specification provided with the notice to remedy or mitigate such inability (“**Capacity Mitigation Proposal**”).

15.2 The Capacity Mitigation Proposal may, without limitation, include measures to be implemented by the Franchisee to:

- (a) remedy the circumstances leading to the Franchisee being unable to prepare a Timetable and/or a Train Plan which meets the requirements of paragraph 14.1; and/or
- (b) minimise, so far as is possible, the amount by which Target Passenger Demand exceeds the provision of Passenger Carrying Capacity on the affected Passenger Services;
- (c) ensure, so far as is possible, that such excess is not unduly concentrated on any particular Route or Passenger Service; and
- (d) minimise, so far as is possible, the extent to which passengers are required to stand:
  - (i) on boarding any Off-Peak Passenger Service; and
  - (ii) twenty (20) minutes after boarding (or such other time period as the Secretary of State may stipulate) on any Peak Passenger Service,

in all such cases (unless the Secretary of State specifies to the contrary) taking into account both Actual Passenger Demand and Forecast Passenger Demand.

15.3 Where the Secretary of State reasonably believes that future circumstances may lead to the Franchisee being unable to prepare a Timetable and/or a Train Plan which meets the requirements of paragraph 14.1 at any time within the next four (4) years (including after the end of the ICWC Term) the Secretary of State shall have the right to serve notice on the Franchisee specifying those future circumstances and the date that the Franchisee should assume that they will arise from and requiring it to produce a Capacity Mitigation Proposal to remedy or mitigate such future circumstances on the basis of assumptions provided by the Secretary of State.

15.4 The Capacity Mitigation Proposal shall (unless the Secretary of State specifies to the contrary) include the Franchisee’s informed estimate of Forecast Passenger Demand, in such format and to such level of disaggregation as the Secretary of State may reasonably require. Without limitation such specification may require the Franchisee to present options to address relevant issues through:

- (a) alterations to the Train Service Requirement;
- (b) modification of rolling stock or the acquisition of additional or replacement rolling stock;
- (c) alterations to Fares; and/or
- (d) alterations or enhancements to any track, signalling, station, depot or other relevant railway infrastructure.

15.5 The Capacity Mitigation Proposal shall provide a comprehensive analysis backed by relevant data and assumptions of:

- (a) all cost and revenue and other financial implications of options contained within it including the potential implications for Franchise Payments;
- (b) the implications (if any) for the Benchmarks and/or the Annual Benchmarks; and
- (c) the likely impact of options within it for existing and future passenger journeys and journey opportunities.

15.6 The Franchisee shall meet with the Secretary of State to discuss the Capacity Mitigation Proposal and provide such further information or analysis and further iterations of the Capacity Mitigation Proposal as the Secretary of State shall reasonably require. If the Secretary of State decides that the Secretary of State wishes to implement any Capacity Mitigation Proposal (or any part thereof) this shall be by way of a Variation.

**16. New or amended Train Service Requirement by the Secretary of State and Franchisee Informed Opinion**

16.1 As and when required, whether for the purposes of considering alterations to the Train Service Requirement or otherwise, the Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State:

- (a) its informed estimate of Forecast Passenger Demand, in such format and to such level of disaggregation as the Secretary of State may reasonably require in order to assist the Secretary of State's decision making on future train service requirements, infrastructure, station and rolling stock vehicle investment, the best use of the network and the alleviation of overcrowding;
- (b) its informed opinion as to any changes to the current Train Service Requirement which:
  - (i) should be made in order to deliver an optimal range of railway passenger services relative to Target Passenger Demand; and
  - (ii) could be implemented and operated without additional resources or an adjustment to the Franchise Payments;
- (c) its informed opinion as to any changes to the current Train Service Requirement which:
  - (i) would deliver an optimal range of railway passenger services relative to Target Passenger Demand; and
  - (ii) could only be implemented and operated with additional resources and/or an adjustment to the Franchise Payments, together with an explanation as to:
    - (A) what additional resources and/or adjustments are necessary to make such changes; and
    - (B) why such additional resources and/or adjustments are necessary;
- (d) a draft of the Train Plan that the Franchisee considers that each set of proposed changes would require.

16.2 Prior to issuing any amended or new Train Service Requirement the Secretary of State shall provide to the Franchisee the Secretary of State's draft of any proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement stating the date upon which the Secretary of State proposes that such amended or new Train Service Requirement should take effect along with the Secretary of State's views as to the changes (if any) that the Secretary of State proposes to make to the Benchmarks and/or the Annual Benchmarks.

16.3 On receipt of any such draft of a proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement the Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State (if so requested) its informed opinion:

- (a) with supporting reasons as to the impact of the proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement on the delivery of an optimal range of railway passenger services patterns relative to Target Passenger Demand and compliance with paragraph 14.1 of this Schedule 1.1;
- (b) with supporting reasons as to the changes to resources and adjustment to Franchise Payments (if any) which would be required in consequence of the proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement;
- (c) with supporting reasons as to changes (if any) to the Benchmarks and/or the Annual Benchmarks;
- (d) of the process to be required to implement the proposed amendment to the Train Service Requirement together with a plan for the implementation of the amendment to the Train Service Requirement (including all steps required to ensure that the Franchisee can deliver a Timetable compliant with such amended or new Train Service Requirement) prepared in accordance with procedural arrangements specified by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 17 of this Schedule 1.1; and
- (e) with supporting reasons of the likely impact of the proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement on existing and future passenger journeys and journey opportunities,

together with a draft of the Train Plan that it considers that the proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement would require.

- 16.4 There may be iterations of drafts of the proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement and the Franchisee shall to the extent required by the Secretary of State have the obligations described in this paragraph 16 in respect of all such iterations.
- 16.5 Processes contained in this paragraph 16 shall take place in accordance with procedural arrangements and timescales stipulated by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 17.2 of this Schedule 1.1.
- 16.6 The Secretary of State may, in accordance with any stipulation made under paragraph 17.2, issue to the Franchisee any amended or new Train Service Requirement that the Secretary of State requires the Franchisee to operate and notice of the amendments (if any) to the Benchmarks and/or Annual Benchmarks. Such amended or new Train Service Requirement will be issued prior to the commencement of the timetable development process of Network Rail for the Timetable in respect of which it is proposed to implement the change to Passenger Services arising from the amended or new Train Service Requirement.
- 16.7 In the absence of the Secretary of State issuing any amended or new Train Service Requirement the existing Train Service Requirement will remain in full force and effect. The degree of variation from any Train Service Requirement specified at the date of the Franchise Agreement was entered into in respect of any particular period and brought about by any amended or new Train Service Requirement issued pursuant to this paragraph 16 shall (where relevant) be of a magnitude no greater than that contemplated in the Invitation to Tender.
- 16.8 At the same time as the Secretary of State provides the Franchisee with a draft of any proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement pursuant to paragraph 16.1, the Secretary of State shall also provide to the Franchisee the Secretary of State's opinion of any amendments (if any) that are required to the Benchmarks and/or the Annual Benchmarks.
- 16.9 The Secretary of State shall be permitted to carry out indicative Runs of the ICWC Financial Model for the purposes of considering the effects of the Secretary of State's proposed amended or new Train Service Requirement.

#### **17. Procedural Arrangements and Timescales**

- 17.1 The Franchisee agrees that the effective operation of the provisions of this Schedule 1.1 (and of provisions addressing the same or similar matters in other franchise agreements) will require certain procedural arrangements and timescales to be followed to a common timescale by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee, Network Rail and others.
- 17.2 The Franchisee agrees that the Secretary of State may stipulate any reasonable procedural arrangements and timescales that are to be followed by the Secretary of State and the Franchisee for these purposes (which shall be consistent with any relevant standard railway industry processes for the development of the Timetable and the resultant Train Plan) and that the Secretary of State may amend any such stipulation from time to time.
- 17.3 The Secretary of State agrees to consult the Franchisee as far as reasonably practicable prior to stipulating or amending any such procedural arrangements and timescales in accordance with paragraph 17.2.
- 17.4 Any stipulation by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 17.2:
- (a) shall be at the reasonable discretion of the Secretary of State;
  - (b) may contain procedural arrangements and timescales to be followed by the Franchisee in relation to other changes to the Franchise Services (pursuant to paragraph 1 of Schedule 9.3A (Variations to the Franchise Agreement and Incentivising Beneficial Changes)) in conjunction with the Train Service Requirement; and
  - (c) may provide for iterations of drafts of any amended or new Train Service Requirement, Train Plan or Timetable and for indicative Runs of the ICWC Financial Model in relation thereto.

- 17.5 Any procedural arrangements and timescales stipulated by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 17.2 shall have contractual effect between the Franchisee and the Secretary of State in accordance with the terms of such stipulation.
- 18. Obligations in relation to other Train Operators**
- 18.1 Subject to the terms of the Licences and any applicable Law, the Franchisee shall co-operate with other Train Operators in respect of their timetable development rights where such other Train Operators provide railway passenger services meeting common or displaced passenger demand, with a view to ensuring that:
- (a) the levels of overcrowding over the Routes or other relevant routes are minimised and not unduly concentrated on particular railway passenger services, Routes or other relevant routes;
  - (b) the stopping patterns of such railway passenger services are placed at approximately evenly-spaced intervals throughout each relevant hour, taking into account the reasonable needs of passengers and the different types of railway passenger services provided by other Train Operators and the Franchisee; and
  - (c) a reasonable pattern of railway passenger service is provided on the relevant route(s) to enable passengers to make Connections (particularly where low frequency railway passenger services are operated, first trains or last trains are involved, taking account of seasonal fluctuations in passenger demand and the time needed to make any such Connection).
- 19. Provisions relating to Access Agreements and Property Leases**
- 19.1 Where the Secretary of State considers it requisite for the purposes of better securing the delivery of railway passenger services under the Franchise Agreement, or any other franchise agreement, or for the better achievement by the Secretary of State of any of the Secretary of State's duties, functions and powers in relation to railways, the Secretary of State may require the Franchisee:
- (a) to exercise or refrain from exercising any or all of its rights under any Access Agreement or any Property Lease, or any related rights under such other agreements as the Secretary of State may specify; and/or
  - (b) subject to the consent of the counterparty thereto, to assign, novate or surrender its rights under any Access Agreement or Property Lease.
- 19.2 Except to the extent that the Secretary of State otherwise indicates from time to time, the Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State of its intention to enter into or amend any Access Agreement:
- (a) where the approval of the ORR is required under the Act, not less than ten (10) Weekdays before the submission to the ORR; and
  - (b) where no such approval is required, not less than ten (10) Weekdays prior to entering into such amendment or Access Agreement.
- 19.3 The Franchisee shall comply with its obligations under any Access Agreement or any Property Lease to which it is a party from time to time:
- (a) to notify or consult with the Secretary of State on any matter or proposal relating to that Access Agreement or Property Lease; and
  - (b) which are contingent on a particular course of action being taken by the Secretary of State or which are otherwise expressly included in that Access Agreement or Property Lease for the benefit of the Secretary of State.
- 19.4 If and to the extent that:
- (a) the Secretary of State exercises the Secretary of State's rights pursuant to paragraph 19.1;
  - (b) the Franchisee's compliance with the Secretary of State's requirements pursuant to paragraph 19.1 would lead to the unavoidable consequence of the Franchisee contravening any other terms of the Franchise Agreement or the occurrence of an Event of Default; and

(c) the Franchisee duly complies with such requirements,  
no such contravention of the Franchise Agreement or Event of Default shall have occurred.

**20. The Timetable and Network Rail's Working Timetable**

- 20.1 Any specification of Passenger Services in the Train Service Requirement shall (unless the Secretary of State states to the contrary) be regarded as relating to how those Passenger Services are to be provided for in the National Rail Timetable that Network Rail publishes for passengers.
- 20.2 The Franchisee shall ensure, for each period between two (2) consecutive Passenger Change Dates during the Franchise Term that the Timetable for such period is, in its reasonable opinion, not materially different from the relevant working timetable issued by Network Rail.

Withdrawn March 2024

## SCHEDULE 1.2A

### Operating Obligations

#### 1. Daily Operating Obligations

The Franchisee agrees to use all reasonable endeavours to operate on each day of the Franchise Term each of its Passenger Services as are set out in the Plan of the Day for that day and with at least the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Plan for that Passenger Service. The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable if it has on any day of the Franchise Term failed to operate to a material extent each of its Passenger Services as are set out in the Plan of the Day for that day and with at least the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Plan for that Passenger Service.

#### 2. Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation

2.1 If the Secretary of State considers that the Franchisee may have breached any of its obligations under any of paragraphs 12.1, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 14.1, 14.2 or 14.3 of Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development) and/or paragraph 1 of this Schedule 1.2, the Secretary of State shall (in addition to the Secretary of State's right to obtain further information pursuant to paragraph 1.1 of Schedule 1.5 (Information about Passengers) and without prejudice to any other rights of the Secretary of State under the Franchise Agreement or otherwise) have the right, by serving notice on the Franchisee, to instigate an investigation of the Franchisee's compliance with its obligations under paragraphs 12.1, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 14.1, 14.2 or 14.3 of Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development) and paragraph 1 of this Schedule 1.2, including any differences between the Forecast Passenger Demand and the Actual Passenger Demand and any unreasonable assumptions about the timetables likely to be operated by other Train Operators made by the Franchisee ("**Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation**").

2.2 Following the service of such a notice the Franchisee shall:

- (a) provide such information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purposes of determining if the Franchisee has complied with its obligations under paragraphs 12.1, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 14.1, 14.2 or 14.3 of Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development) and/or paragraph 1 of this Schedule 1.2 including evidence of:
  - (i) the steps taken by the Franchisee to amend and/or enter into Access Agreements, exercise Timetable Development Rights and exercise its rights under the Network Rail Track Access Agreement to object, to make representations and to withhold consent in respect of any actual or proposed act or omission by Network Rail in relation to such agreement in respect of its Timetable Development Rights;
  - (ii) the extent to which the Franchisee has operated on each day of the relevant Reporting Period each of its Passenger Services as are set out in the Plan of the Day for that day and with at least the Passenger Carrying Capacity specified in the Train Plan for that Passenger Service;
  - (iii) Forecast Passenger Demand and the way that it was calculated including all evidence taken into account and assumptions used (including any divergences from then existing industry modelling standards and the reasons for such divergences); and
  - (iv) any assumptions about the timetables likely to be operated by other Train Operators made by the Franchisee; and
  - (v) the alternative solutions considered by the Franchisee before finalising the Timetable and Train Plan and the reasons why any such alternative solutions were not adopted; and
- (b) permit the Secretary of State to carry out an audit of the extent to which the Timetable and Train Plan enables the Franchisee to operate railway passenger services that comply with the Train Service Requirement and paragraph 14 of Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development) and fully co-operate with and provide all information needed to facilitate such audit.

#### 2.3 Contravention of the Franchise Agreement

- (a) The Franchisee shall be in contravention of the Franchise Agreement if following the completion by the Secretary of State of the Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation the Secretary of State concludes that the Franchisee breached any of its obligations under any of paragraphs 12.1, 12.3, 12.4, 12.5, 14.1, 14.2 or 14.3 of Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development) and/or paragraph 1 of this Schedule 1.2 including where the Franchisee:
- (i) failed to act reasonably in calculating Forecast Passenger Demand because it unreasonably assumed that there would be differences between Forecast Passenger Demand and Actual Passenger Demand at the time that the Forecast Passenger Demand calculation was made; or
  - (ii) made unreasonable assumptions about the timetables likely to be operated by other Train Operators serving some or all of the same stations as the Franchisee.
- (b) Where the Secretary of State does conclude pursuant to paragraph 2.3(a) above that the Franchisee has breached any relevant obligation the Franchisee shall pay to the Secretary of State the costs incurred by the Secretary of State in undertaking any Timetabling and Train Planning Compliance Investigation (including any audit pursuant to paragraph 2.2(b)).
- (c) The Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee if the Secretary of State concludes pursuant to paragraph 2.3(a) that the Franchisee is in contravention of the Franchise Agreement and the Secretary of State may at the Secretary of State's discretion, and entirely without prejudice to the Secretary of State's other rights consequent upon the relevant contravention, serve a Remedial Plan Notice pursuant to paragraph 2 of Schedule 10.1 (Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement).

### 3. Timetable changes proposed by Network Rail

- 3.1 The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State promptly after being notified by Network Rail that Network Rail has decided or proposes to:
- (a) omit from the Plan of the Day Passenger Services that are included in the Timetable; or
  - (b) reschedule in the Plan of the Day Passenger Services from their scheduling in the Timetable.
- 3.2 To the extent that any such decision or proposal may, in the reasonable opinion of the Franchisee, materially (having regard to both duration and scale) prejudice the Franchisee's ability to deliver the Timetable with the Passenger Carrying Capacity stipulated in the Train Plan the Franchisee shall explain in such notification the way in which, in its reasonable opinion, such omission or rescheduling may materially prejudice the Franchisee's ability to deliver the Timetable with the Passenger Carrying Capacity stipulated in the Train Plan.
- 3.3 The Franchisee agrees to supply to the Secretary of State from time to time, in the format required by the Secretary of State, such details of any actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services by Network Rail as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, including details of the steps which the Franchisee proposes to take pursuant to paragraph 3.4.
- 3.4 Where the actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services is one which may, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State or the Franchisee, materially prejudice the Franchisee's ability to deliver the Timetable with the Passenger Carrying Capacity stipulated in the Train Plan, the Franchisee shall promptly notify the Secretary of State and the Franchisee agrees to cooperate with Network Rail in relation to such proposal, unless and until: (i) the Franchisee reasonably believes that such proposal would be likely to materially detrimental to the interests of passengers on railway passenger services in Great Britain, or (ii) the Secretary of State specifically instructs the Franchisee accordingly, in which case the Franchisee shall exercise its rights under the Network Rail Track Access Agreement (including the Network Code) to:
- (a) object (including submitting its objection to any relevant dispute resolution arrangements or procedures and appealing against any award or determination under such arrangements or procedures, including to the ORR);
  - (b) make representations; and

(c) withhold consent,

in respect of such actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services by Network Rail.

3.5 NOT USED.

3.6 NOT USED.

3.7 The provisions of this paragraph 3 shall apply to any actual or proposed omission or rescheduling of Passenger Services that originates from any person other than Network Rail or the Secretary of State, as those provisions apply to Network Rail.

**4. Timetable changes proposed by the Franchisee**

4.1 The Franchisee agrees, subject to paragraph 4.3, not to propose to Network Rail:

- (a) the addition to the Plan of the Day of any railway passenger services which are not included in the Timetable;
- (b) the omission from the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services included in the Timetable; or
- (c) the rescheduling in the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services from their scheduling in the Timetable,

without the Secretary of State’s prior consent.

4.2 The Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State an amended Train Plan in respect of each Timetable change proposal.

4.3 If, in the opinion of the Franchisee (acting reasonably), it would not be reasonably practicable to obtain the Secretary of State’s consent prior to proposing any of the items referred to in paragraphs 4.1(a), 4.1(b) or 4.1(c) to Network Rail, the Franchisee shall be entitled to propose such items to Network Rail without the Secretary of State’s prior consent provided that the Franchisee shall inform the Secretary of State of such proposals as soon as is reasonably practicable.

4.3A The Franchisee shall ensure that any proposals to Network Rail submitted pursuant to paragraphs 4.1 or 4.3:

- (a) take full and proper account of the likely passenger demand (including a reasonable assessment of key workers) considering any known or anticipated impacts of COVID-19 (including without limitation any guidance published by Public Health England, and any Legislation, direction or instruction issued by any relevant local, governmental or other competent authority in the United Kingdom from time to time);
- (b) utilise an appropriate number of Franchise Employees to support the likely passenger demand (as determined having taking into consideration the matters referred to in paragraph 4.3A(a)); and
- (c) ensure that the Train Fleet is deployed in an optimal manner taking account of all relevant circumstances, including the latest available official guidance relating to social distancing.

4.3B The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to co-operate with other Train Operators in respect of the Franchisee’s proposals to Network Rail pursuant to paragraphs 4.1 and 4,3 or any emergency timetables proposed by other Train Operators to ensure that a reasonable pattern of railway passenger service is provided on the relevant route(s) to enable passengers to make Connections (particularly where low frequency railway passenger services are operated or first trains or last trains are involved, taking account of the likely fluctuations in passenger demand as a result of COVID-19 and the time needed to make any such Connection).

4.3C The Franchisee shall use reasonable endeavours to take into account the requirements of operators of rail freight services in respect of the Franchisee’s proposals to Network Rail pursuant to paragraphs 4.1 and 4.3.

#### 4.4 Special Events

- 4.4 The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to operate adequate railway passenger services to or from any special events which are not already provided for in the Plan of the Day to meet the passenger demand that is reasonably likely to arise from such special events and to ensure that the railway passenger services provided have an appropriate amount of passenger carrying capacity. The Franchisee shall in meeting its obligations pursuant to this paragraph 4.4:
- (a) work with Network Rail and other Train Operators to plan amendments to the Plan of the Day through the omission, addition or rescheduling of Passenger Services including, but not limited to, additional or retimed late services and the operation of services on reasonable diversionary routes;
  - (b) seek to optimise the effective delivery of the Passenger Services as a whole with the provision of appropriate capacity in the context of the additional demand consequent upon a relevant special event, including considering how maintenance requirements will be planned around special events and alternative options to provide appropriate capacity; and
  - (c) work with the organisers of special events to understand the additional passenger demand that is likely to arise from such special events.
- 4.5 The Franchisee shall from time to time promptly provide such evidence of its compliance with its obligations under paragraph 4.4 as the Secretary of State may reasonably request.

#### 5. Timetable changes and Train Plan changes requested by the Secretary of State

- 5.1 The Franchisee agrees, as and when requested by the Secretary of State, to use all reasonable endeavours to seek and to obtain:
- (a) the addition to the Plan of the Day of any railway passenger services that are not included in the Timetable;
  - (b) the omission from the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services that are included in the Timetable; and/or
  - (c) the rescheduling in the Plan of the Day of any Passenger Services from their scheduling in the Timetable.
- 5.2 The Secretary of State may reasonably request that the Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State an amendment to the Train Plan at any time.

#### 6. Obligations of the Franchisee in the event of disruption to railway passenger services

- 6.1 In the event of any planned or unplanned disruption to railway passenger services operated on the Routes, or on other parts of the network which are reasonably local to the Routes, the Franchisee shall:
- (a) without prejudice to any other provision of this Schedule 1.2, notify the Secretary of State promptly where such disruption would materially (having regard to both duration and scale) prejudice the Franchisee's ability to deliver the Timetable or deliver the Timetable in accordance with the Train Plan;
  - (b) co-operate with Network Rail and other Train Operators to act in the overall interests of passengers using such railway passenger services, including using all reasonable endeavours to ensure that such disruption is not concentrated on a particular part of the network, except where such concentration either:
    - (i) would be in the overall interests of passengers using such Passenger Services or railway passenger services and would not result in disproportionate inconvenience to any group of passengers; or
    - (ii) is reasonably necessary as a result of the cause or the location of the disruption; and

- (c) use all reasonable endeavours to provide or secure the provision of alternative transport arrangements in accordance with paragraph 6.2.

6.2 The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to provide or secure the provision of alternative transport arrangements to enable passengers affected by any disruption referred to in paragraph 6.1 to complete their intended journeys in accordance with this paragraph 6.2. In particular, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to:

- (a) ensure that such alternative transport arrangements are of reasonable quality, of a reasonably similar frequency to the Passenger Services included in the Timetable which such arrangements replace and reasonably fit for the purpose of the journey to be undertaken;
- (b) transport passengers to, or as near as reasonably practicable to, the end of their intended journey on such Passenger Services, having particular regard to the needs of any Disabled Persons and, where appropriate, making additional arrangements for such Disabled Persons to complete their intended journey;
- (c) provide adequate and prominent publicity of such alternative transport arrangements in advance, subject, in the case of unplanned disruption, to the Franchisee having sufficient notice of such disruption to enable it to provide such publicity;
- (d) provide sufficient alternative transport capacity for the reasonably foreseeable demand for the disrupted Passenger Services; and
- (e) ensure, if any planned disruption overruns, that there is a reasonable contingency arrangement for such alternative transport arrangements to continue for the duration of such overrun.

## 7. **Obligation to use all reasonable endeavours under this Schedule 1.2**

7.1 Any obligation in this Schedule 1.2 on the part of the Franchisee to use **"all reasonable endeavours"** shall (with the exception of paragraph 5 of this Schedule 1.2) include an obligation to:

- (a) ensure (so far as it is able to do so) the provision of the Passenger Services as set out in the Plan of the Day in accordance with the Train Plan in ordinary operating conditions;
- (b) take reasonable measures to avoid and/or reduce the impact of any disruption to the Franchise Services having regard to all the circumstances, including the reasonably foreseeable risks arising from the matters referred to in paragraph 7.2; and
- (c) actively manage the performance by Network Rail of its contractual relationship with the Franchisee (and provide appropriate management resources for this purpose) so as to secure the best performance reasonably obtainable from Network Rail by these means (including taking the steps referred to in paragraph 7.4), having regard to all the circumstances.

7.2 The matters to which the Franchisee is to have regard pursuant to paragraph 7.1(b) shall include:

- (a) variations in weather and operating conditions (including Network Rail's infrastructure not being available for any reason), which may in either case include seasonal variations;
- (b) default by, or restrictions imposed by, suppliers to the Franchisee;
- (c) shortages of appropriately skilled or qualified Franchise Employees;
- (d) disputes with Franchise Employees;
- (e) the availability of the Train Fleet, having regard to maintenance requirements and any Mandatory Modifications;
- (f) establishing reasonable Turnaround Time allowances for enabling or disabling (as appropriate) any part of a train, the rostering of any train crew and the servicing or cleaning of any rolling stock vehicles;

- (g) failures of rolling stock vehicles in service and contingency arrangements (including Hot Standbys and rescue traction); and
- (h) the impact, and emerging projections relating to the likely or potential impact, from time to time, of COVID-19 on the Franchisee's ability to provide the Passenger Services and/or the level of passenger demand or reasonably expected passenger demand for the Passenger Services.

7.3 For the purpose of taking measures in respect of any disruption to the Franchise Services in accordance with paragraph 7.1(b) and assessing the extent of any risk referred to in paragraph 7.1(b) and any such risk's reasonable foreseeability, regard shall be had both:

- (a) to the historical levels of incidence of disruption in the operation of:
  - (i) the Franchise Services;
  - (ii) similar services both by the Franchisee and/or its predecessors; and
  - (iii) other services of a type similar to the Franchise Services; and
- (b) to potential changes in circumstances which may affect those levels.

7.4 The steps to which paragraph 7.1(c) refers include:

- (a) co-operating with Network Rail in the development, agreement and implementation of:
  - (i) a five (5) year (rolling) Performance Strategy Plan; and
  - (ii) recovery plans in response to failures to achieve the performance levels specified in any Performance Strategy Plan;
- (b) co-operating with Network Rail in adopting the principles set out in any Service Recovery Plans agreed between Network Rail and the Franchisee from time to time;
- (c) undertaking regular reviews of:
  - (i) the most common and most detrimental causes of delay to the Passenger Services; and
  - (ii) the causes of the ten (10) delays to the Passenger Services with the longest duration (to the extent not already reviewed in accordance with paragraph 7.4(c)(i)),

which have occurred during a defined review period (e.g. weekly/four (4) weekly/quarterly) and which have been caused by the Franchisee, any other Train Operator, any other train operator licensed under the Act or Network Rail;

- (d) undertaking with Network Rail a review of the time taken to recover the Passenger Services following the occurrence of any of the events specified in paragraphs 7.4(c)(i) and 7.4(c)(ii) and seeking to identify and implement actions that reduce the delay effect of such events;
- (e) setting up and holding regular and effective performance review meetings with Network Rail, evidenced by meeting minutes and the closure of actions agreed between the Parties;
- (f) regularly monitoring (at least every Reporting Period) the delivery of local output commitments made by Network Rail in the Performance Strategy Plan and derived delivery plans and using reasonable endeavours to specify and develop such delivery plans;
- (g) as and when required by Network Rail, co-operating with Network Rail in improving the accuracy of future timetables by providing access to trains (and data collected from train systems), other facilities and/or information;
- (h) co-operating with Network Rail in other delay management initiatives and ongoing quarterly reviews of the Performance Strategy Plan;

- (i) regularly reviewing (at least every Reporting Period) the imposition and clearance of temporary speed restrictions;
  - (j) regularly reviewing (at least every Reporting Period) the timely and efficient handover and hand-back of possessions; and
  - (k) where appropriate and where Network Rail fails to perform its obligations under the Network Rail Track Access Agreement, enforcing the Franchisee's rights under the Network Rail Track Access Agreement.
- 7.5 The Franchisee undertakes to reasonably co-operate with Network Rail with regard to Network Rail's management of the network, including in relation to the establishment of up to date Timetable Planning Rules.
- 7.6 To the extent not already provided for in the Franchise Agreement, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure the performance by Network Rail of its obligations under any relevant agreement including, where appropriate or where requested by the Secretary of State, enforcing its rights against Network Rail under any such agreement.
- 7.7 When and to the extent reasonably requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State evidence of the steps taken by the Franchisee in order to comply with its obligations under this paragraph 7.

Withdrawn March 2024

SCHEDULE 1.3A

NOT USED

Withdrawn March 2024

## SCHEDULE 1.4A

## Passenger Facing Obligations

**1. Publishing the Timetable****1.1 The First Timetable**

The Franchisee shall publish on the Start Date:

- (a) the Timetable:
  - (i) at each staffed Station, by making the relevant information available upon request and free of charge in one or more booklets or in other similar form;
  - (ii) at each Station, by displaying the relevant information on information displays;
  - (iii) at each Franchisee Access Station, by providing to the operator of each such station the departure and arrival times of the Passenger Services that call at each such station and the principal Connections to any other transport services relevant to each such station in the same forms as are specified in paragraphs (i) and (ii); and
  - (iv) on the Franchisee's website; and
- (b) the timetables of other Train Operators at Stations, in accordance with paragraph 1.4.

**1.2 Timetable Revisions and Alterations**

Subject to paragraph 2A.2, the Franchisee shall publish updates or replacements to the Timetable at the locations specified in paragraph 1.1 to the extent necessary to reflect any changes which come into effect on a Passenger Change Date:

- (a) in the case of booklets, at least four (4) weeks before the changes come into effect;
- (b) in the case of information displays, no later than the day before the changes come into effect;
- (c) in the case of information provided to the operators of Franchisee Access Stations, in sufficient time for such information to be published by such operators within the time limits provided for in this paragraph 1.2; and
- (d) in the case of the Franchisee's website, at least four (4) weeks before the changes come into effect.

1.3 In addition, subject to paragraph 2A.2, the Franchisee shall:

- (a) subject to paragraph 1.4, display posters at each Station advising passengers of all Significant Alterations between any two Passenger Change Dates to railway passenger services calling at that Station, no later than four (4) weeks in advance of the date on which the alterations come into effect; and
- (b) provide posters to the operators of Franchisee Access Stations, advising passengers of all Significant Alterations between any two (2) Passenger Change Dates to the Passenger Services which call at such Franchisee Access Stations, in sufficient time for such information to be published by such operators within the time limit provided for in paragraph 1.3(a).

**1.4 Other Train Operators' Timetables**

Subject to paragraph 2A.2, the Franchisee shall also comply with the requirements of paragraphs 1.1 to 1.3 inclusive by making available booklets and displaying information in information displays and otherwise displaying posters in respect of any other Train Operator's timetable at each Station where the railway passenger services of such other Train Operator are scheduled to call or in respect of which Connections to such other Train Operators railway passenger services can be made from that Station:

- (a) within the time limits specified in paragraphs 1.2 and 1.3 where and to the extent that such other Train Operator delivers to the Franchisee the relevant information and materials in sufficient time for the Franchisee to so publish; and
- (b) as soon as reasonably practicable thereafter where and to the extent that such other Train Operator delivers the relevant information and materials late to the Franchisee.

**1.5 National Rail Timetable and National Rail Enquiry Scheme**

The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure (including by virtue of any arrangements made from time to time between Network Rail and RSP) that the National Rail Timetable (or any replacement timetable), which Network Rail is responsible for publishing from time to time in relation to the Passenger Services, incorporates or is consistent with its Timetable from time to time.

- 1.6 Subject to paragraph 2A.2, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure that information in relation to:
- (a) the Timetable; and
  - (b) any Significant Alterations to the Timetable to take effect between any two (2) Passenger Change Dates,

is available to passengers through the National Rail Enquiry Scheme (or any replacement) not less than four (4) weeks prior to coming into effect.

**2. Communicating Late Timetable Changes**

Subject to paragraph 2A.2:

- 2.1 Save in respect of Significant Alterations, for which the provisions of paragraphs 1.3 and 1.6 shall apply, the Franchisee shall inform passengers, so far as possible on not less than seven (7) days' prior notice, if it will be unable to operate its trains in accordance with the Timetable. Such information shall include any revised Timetable or travelling arrangements.
- 2.2 Such information shall be provided by:
  - (a) revising or adding to the information displays referred to in paragraph 1.1;
  - (b) notifying the operators of the Franchisee Access Stations, as appropriate, including by providing such operators with revised posters; and
  - (c) updating the Franchisee's website.
- 2.3 The Franchisee shall revise or add to the information displays at the Stations promptly on receipt of any equivalent information relating to the railway passenger services of other Train Operators whose services call at the Stations.
- 2.4 Where the Franchisee is unable to provide the information specified in paragraph 2.1 because the relevant revisions are made on an emergency basis, the Franchisee shall notify passengers and publish the relevant revisions by way of the means contemplated by paragraph 2.2 as soon as reasonably practicable.
- 2.5 The Franchisee shall ensure that, so far as reasonably practicable (including by communication of the relevant information to persons likely to receive enquiries), passengers making enquiries regarding the Passenger Services are informed of the revised Timetable and any revised travel arrangements of the Franchisee as far in advance as is reasonably practicable.

**2A Communicating Emergency Timetables**

- 2A.1 The Franchisee shall publish:
- (a) any amendments to the Timetable made pursuant to paragraphs 4, 5 or 6 of Schedule 1.2A as soon as reasonably practicable;

- (i) at each Station, by displaying the relevant information on information displays;
  - (ii) at each Franchisee Access Station, by providing to the operator of each such station the departure and arrival times of the Passenger Services that call at each such station and the principal Connections to any other transport services relevant to each such station in the same forms as are specified in paragraph (i);
  - (iii) on the Franchisee's website;
  - (iv) via the Franchisee's social media accounts (through which the Franchisee shall in any event publish any such amendments to the Timetable no later than 2 hours following agreement of such amendments); and
  - (v) via any other direct means of communication with passengers available to the Franchisee including but not limited to email and/or text messaging services; and
- (b) as far and as soon as is reasonably practicable, any emergency timetables of other Train Operator's where the railway passenger services of such other Train Operator are scheduled to call or in respect of which Connections to such other Train Operators railway passenger services can be made from that Station:
- (i) at each Station, by displaying the relevant information on information displays; and
  - (ii) on the Franchisee's website.

2A.2 To the extent that this paragraph 2A requires the Franchisee to undertake activities that it would otherwise be obliged to perform pursuant to paragraphs 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.6 and 2, and there are any discrepancies between the timescales or other requirements relating to such activities between this paragraph 2A and paragraphs 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.6 or 2, the relevant requirements of this paragraph 2A shall take precedence over those in paragraphs 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.6 or 2 (as applicable).

### 3. Fares Selling Restrictions

#### 3.1 *Restrictions on Sales*

The Franchisee shall ensure that the purchaser of any Protected Fare or Commuter Fare:

- (a) shall be entitled, without further charge, to such rights of access and egress and other similar rights at the commencement and end of the relevant intended journey or journeys as may be reasonably necessary for such purchaser to travel on the Passenger Services;
- (b) shall not be required to incur any cost or take any action beyond the payment of an amount equal to the Price of such Protected Fare or Commuter Fare (as the case may be) and, in relation to the issue of a Season Ticket Fare, the completion of an identity card as the Franchisee may reasonably require; and
- (c) shall not be required to pay an amount in respect of a seat reservation or other similar right which it may be compulsory for such purchaser to have in order to make a journey with such Protected fare or Commuter Fare (as the case may be) on a Passenger Service.

3.2 The Franchisee shall procure that for any:

- (a) Protected Return Fare, Single Fare which is a Commuter Fare or Return Fare which is a Commuter Fare, each such Fare shall be offered for sale wherever and whenever any other Fare (not being a Season Ticket Fare) for a journey between the same origin and destination stations is offered for sale; and
- (b) Protected Weekly Season Ticket or Season Ticket Fare which is a Commuter Fare each such Fare shall be offered for sale at all staffed ticket offices at which Fares for a journey between the same origin and destination stations are sold and otherwise wherever and whenever any Season Ticket Fare is offered for sale,

in each case, either by the Franchisee or its agents (except persons acting in such capacity by virtue of having been appointed under Parts II to VI of Chapter 9 of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement or by being party to the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement).

3.3 Where the Franchisee sets a limit on the number of Protected Fares or Commuter Fares that may be used on any particular train, such limit shall be the greater of:

- (a) the number of seats in Standard Class Accommodation on such train; and
- (b) the capacity of Standard Class Accommodation of the rolling stock vehicles comprising such train according to the tables set out in Appendix 1 to Schedule 1.6 (The Rolling Stock).

3.4 The Franchisee shall not sell or offer to sell:

- (a) any Fare in respect of which the:
  - (i) Prices are regulated under Schedule 5.4 (Regulation of Fares Basket Values) and Schedule 5.5 (Regulation of Individual Fares), at prices that are greater than the Prices set for such Fares from time to time in accordance with Schedule 5.4 and Schedule 5.5; and
  - (ii) Child Prices are regulated under paragraph 1.3 of Schedule 5.5 (Regulation of Individual Fares) at prices that are greater than fifty per cent (50%) of the Price of the relevant Fare;
- (b) any Fare or Discount Card which has a validity of thirteen (13) or more months, except to the extent required to do so under the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement.

### 3.5 **Agents of the Franchisee**

The Franchisee shall procure that all persons selling or offering to sell Fares on its behalf (whether under the terms of the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, as its agents or otherwise):

- (a) for Fares in respect of which the:
  - (i) Prices are regulated under Schedule 5.4 (Regulation of Fares Basket Values) and Schedule 5.5 (Regulation of Individual Fares), sell or offer to sell at prices no greater than the Prices set for such Fares from time to time in accordance with Schedule 5.4 and Schedule 5.5; and
  - (ii) NOT USED;
- (b) for Fares in respect of which the Child Price has been set pursuant to paragraph 2.1 of Schedule 5.2 (Franchisee's Obligation to Create Fares), sell or offer to sell such Fares to any person under the age of 16 for an amount which is no greater than fifty per cent (50%) of the Price of the relevant Fare; and
- (c) for all Fares:
  - (i) do not sell or offer to sell any Fare or Discount Card with a validity of thirteen (13) or more months without the consent of the Secretary of State (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld); and
  - (ii) comply with the provisions of paragraph 5 of Schedule 15.2 (Last Twelve (12) or Thirteen (13) Months of Franchise Period and Other Conduct of Business Provisions) to the extent they apply to the selling of Fares by the Franchisee.

### 3.6 **Additional Ancillary Services**

The Franchisee shall, subject to this paragraph 3, be entitled to charge a purchaser of any Protected Fare or Commuter Fare for any additional services:

- (a) which are ancillary to the railway passenger service for which such Protected Fare or Commuter Fare (as the case may be) was purchased (including, charges in respect of car parking or catering services); and
- (b) which such purchaser is not obliged to purchase.

### 3.7 ***Sale of Fares for travel on Bank Holidays***

The Franchisee shall ensure that, for any Fare in respect of travel on a Bank Holiday, it only offers for sale (and shall procure that any person authorised to sell Fares on its behalf only offers for sale) such Fare that has the same rights and restrictions as a Fare which is valid for travel on a Saturday or Sunday.

## 4. **Passenger's Charter**

### 4.1 ***Content***

The Franchisee shall:

- (a) publish its Passenger's Charter:
  - (i) in substantially the same form as the document in the agreed terms marked **PC**; and
  - (ii) in accordance with the requirements specified in paragraph 4.3;
- (b) review the need for changes to the Passenger's Charter at least every three (3) years, in consultation with the Passengers' Council, and shall submit a draft of any revisions to the Passenger's Charter that it wishes to propose, together with proof of such consultation, to the Secretary of State; and
- (c) state the date of publication clearly on the front cover of the Passenger's Charter.

4.2 The Franchisee may not change the Passenger's Charter without the Secretary of State's prior written consent (which is not to be unreasonably withheld).

### 4.3 ***Publishing the Passenger's Charter***

The Franchisee shall publicise its Passenger's Charter by:

- (a) providing copies to the Secretary of State and the Passengers' Council at least seven (7) days before it comes into effect;
- (b) providing copies to passengers, free of charge, at each staffed Station and in the case of any revision thereto, providing such copies at least seven (7) days before such revision comes into effect;
- (c) sending a copy, free of charge, to any person who requests it; and
- (d) displaying it on its website at all times and, in the case of any revision thereto, at least seven (7) days before such revision comes into effect,

save in respect of the Passenger's Charter which is effective on the Start Date, in which case the Franchisee shall publicise such Passenger's Charter in the manner contemplated by this paragraph 4.3 on and from the Start Date.

4.4 The Franchisee shall also provide at each staffed Station the then current passenger's charter of any other Train Operator whose trains call there, subject to the provision of such passenger's charter to the Franchisee by such other Train Operator.

4.5 The Franchisee shall provide copies of its Passenger's Charter to the operators of Franchisee Access Stations to enable such operators to publish it.

### 4.6 ***Passenger's Charter Payments and Other Obligations***

The Franchisee shall:

- (a) make all payments which passengers may reasonably expect to be made or provided from time to time under the terms of the Passenger's Charter (whether or not the Franchisee is legally obliged to do so);
- (b) use all reasonable endeavours to make passengers aware of their right to claim compensation pursuant to the Passenger's Charter including by:
  - (i) displaying the relevant information on trains and at Stations;
  - (ii) making appropriate announcements to passengers on trains and at Stations when the circumstances giving rise to that right occur;
  - (iii) making compensation claim forms readily available to passengers at Stations and on the Franchisee's website; and
  - (iv) any other reasonable means to reflect future advancements in technology proposed in writing either by the Franchisee or the Secretary of State and agreed by both Parties (acting reasonably); and
- (c) use all reasonable endeavours:
  - (i) to comply with any other obligations, statements and representations; and
  - (ii) to meet any other standards or targets of performance, as are comprised in its Passenger's Charter from time to time.

**5. End to End Journeys and Cycles**

The Franchisee shall have due regard to the desirability of acting in a manner which facilitates end to end journeys that involve travel by all transport modes (including cycles). The Franchisee shall permit the carriage of folding cycles on all Passenger Services and non-folding cycles wherever reasonably practicable.

**6. Statutory Notices**

If requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall publish and display at the Stations (and shall use all reasonable endeavours to procure the publication and display at Franchisee Access Stations of) such statutory notices as the Secretary of State may wish to publish from time to time in the exercise of the Secretary of State's functions (including in relation to Closures or any enforcement or penalty orders).

**7. Train and Station Cleaning**

The Franchisee shall:

- 7.1 ensure that the nature and frequency of its planned and reactive programme for maintaining a reasonable standard of train presentation is such that all rolling stock used by the Franchisee in the provision of the Passenger Services is expected to be kept reasonably clean, appropriately stocked with consumables and free from minor defects;
- 7.2 use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that a reasonable standard of train presentation is maintained at all times in respect of all rolling stock used by the Franchisee in the provision of the Passenger Services;
- 7.3 ensure that the nature and frequency of its planned and reactive programme for maintaining a reasonable standard of Station condition and passenger environment is such that all of the Stations are expected to be clean, free of litter and graffiti, painted to a reasonable standard and free from minor defects; and
- 7.4 use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that all Stations are clean, free of litter and graffiti, painted to a reasonable standard and free from minor defects throughout the Franchise Term.

**8. Publication of Performance Data**

8.1 The Franchisee shall in accordance with paragraph 8.2 of this Schedule 1.4 (and in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) publish on the Franchisee's web site in relation to each Reporting Period during the ICWC Term the performance of the Franchisee by reference to:

- (a) Cancellations Figures;
- (b) NOT USED;
- (c) NOT USED;
- (d) NOT USED;
- (e) NOT USED;
- (f) Time to 3 Minutes Figures;
- (g) Time to 15 Minutes Figures;
- (h) All Cancellations Figures; and
- (i) On Time Figures.

Such data shall be published by the Franchisee within ten (10) Weekdays of it becoming available to the Franchisee.

8.2 The Franchisee shall ensure that the data published by it pursuant to paragraph 8.1 shall in each case be shown:

- (a) in relation to all Passenger Services;
- (b) disaggregated by reference to Service Groups;
- (c) on a periodic and/or on an average basis (as applicable); and
- (d) include details of:
  - (i) the number of Passenger Services operated by the Franchisee during each relevant Reporting Period which are late in arriving at their final scheduled destination in the Plan of the Day:
    - (A) by between 30 minutes and 59 minutes;
    - (B) by between 60 minutes and 119 minutes; and
    - (C) by 120 minutes or more,

and the percentage that each such category of delayed Passenger Services represents of the total number of Passenger Services scheduled to be provided in the Plan of the Day during such Reporting Period.

- (ii) NOT USED.

8.3 As part of each Customer Report (excluding the first (1<sup>st</sup>) Customer Report) to be provided by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 10.1 of Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement), the Franchisee shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require):

- (a) the mean average of each of the Cancellations Figures for the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the previous Customer Report (or, in the case of the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Customer Report, since the Start Date);
- (b) the latest Time to 3 Minutes Figures, Time to 15 Minutes Figures, All Cancellation Figures and On Time Figures for the last Reporting Period before publication of the relevant Customer Report;
- (c) from the fourth (4<sup>th</sup>) Customer Report onwards, a summary comparison of the statistics produced pursuant to paragraphs 8.3(a) and 8.3(b) as against the equivalent statistics provided for the same Reporting Period(s) in the previous Franchisee Year;
- (d) an update on the key activities undertaken by the Franchisee to improve its performance in relation to the measures referred to in paragraphs 8.3(a) and 8.3(b); and
- (e) a summary of the key activities planned to be undertaken by the Franchisee in the period in relation to which the next Customer Report will report to improve its performance in relation to the measures referred to in paragraphs 8.3(a) and 8.3(b).

## 9. Publication of Complaints and Faults Handling Data

9.1 As part of each Customer Report (excluding the first (1<sup>st</sup>) Customer Report) to be provided by the Franchisee pursuant to paragraph 10.1 of Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement), the Franchisee shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) in relation to the Reporting Periods that have elapsed since the last Reporting Period reported on in the previous Customer Report or, in the case of the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Customer Report, since the Start Date):

- (a) a summary of the data published by the ORR from time to time in relation to the handling of passenger complaints regarding the Franchisee's operation of the Passenger Services;
- (b) details of the number of faults notified to the Franchisee by passengers or station users through specified channels including the website of the Franchisee (each a "Notified Fault") in each case identifying the total numbers of Notified Faults (by reference to whether such Notified Faults relate to rolling stock or stations), with such numbers further disaggregated by Service Group and broken down into relevant sub-categories of Notified Fault;
- (c) the mean average time taken by the Franchisee:
  - (i) to resolve Notified Faults; and
  - (ii) where Notified Faults are not resolved within twenty (20) Weekdays, to provide feedback to applicable passengers and/or station users on its progress in seeking resolution of such Notified Faults; and
- (d) from the fourth (4<sup>th</sup>) Customer Report onwards a summary comparison of:
  - (i) the mean average number of Notified Faults notified to the Franchisee;
  - (ii) the mean average time taken by the Franchisee to resolve Notified Faults; and
  - (iii) the mean average time taken by the Franchisee, where Notified Faults have not been resolved within twenty (20) Weekdays to provide feedback to applicable passengers and/or station users on its progress in seeking resolution of such Notified Faults,

in each case in comparison with the relevant equivalent mean average statistics provided for the same Reporting Periods in the previous Franchisee Year.

## 10. Route Maps

10.1 The Franchisee shall produce a Route Map which shall include as a minimum;

- (a) all stations served by the Passenger Services; and

- (b) key stations located on any Other Passenger Route Within the Geographical Area (which shall either be selected by the Franchisee on a reasonable basis or, if so directed by the Secretary of State, specified by the Secretary of State in a notice to the Franchisee).

10.2 The Route Map shall include notes identifying:

- (a) in relation to any Other Passenger Route Within the Geographical Area with a principal destination point outside of the Geographical Area, such ultimate origin or ultimate destination point; and
- (b) those Routes over which services are also operated and such service is:
  - (i) operated by a passenger train operator other than the Franchisee; and
  - (ii) run on a more frequent basis (as stated in the National Rail Timetable) than the Passenger Services.

10.3 The Franchisee shall, as soon as reasonably practicable, update the Route Map in all places where it is displayed where there is any change:

- (a) to the Passenger Services, leading to a change in the routes falling within the definition of Route; or
- (b) to the passenger services operated by another passenger train operator (as stated in the National Rail Timetable), leading to a change to the routes falling within the definition of Other Passenger Route Within the Geographical Area.

10.4 The Route Map shall at all times be displayed:

- (a) in every passenger carrying vehicle within the Train Fleet;
- (b) at every Station; and
- (c) on its website.

10.5 The Franchisee shall be regarded as having complied with the requirement of paragraph 10.1 if a map that meets the requirements of a Route Map is produced by a Local Authority or other relevant Stakeholder. The provisions of paragraphs 10.3 and 10.4 shall apply in relation to any such map.

Withdrawn March 2024

SCHEDULE 1.5A

Information about Passengers

1. Passenger Numbers Information

1.1 The Franchisee shall, as and when reasonably requested by the Secretary of State (and, for these purposes, it shall not be unreasonable to make such a request at least twice yearly), provide information to the Secretary of State on the extent of the use by passengers of the Passenger Services. Without limitation to the generality of the foregoing, in particular and when so requested, the Franchisee shall provide information relating to:

- (a) the number of passengers travelling in each class of accommodation:
  - (i) on each Passenger Service;
  - (ii) on each Route; and/or
  - (iii) at any station or between any stations;
- (b) the times of the day, week or year at which passengers travel; and
- (c) the Actual Consist Data and the Scheduled Consist Data,

(the information referred to in the whole of paragraph 1.1 being referred to together as “**Actual Passenger Demand**”).

1.2 The Franchisee shall obtain and collate the information specified in paragraph 1.1 by using the technology specified in paragraph 3. The Franchisee shall ensure that any technology for determining the number of passengers travelling in each class of accommodation that is fitted on the Train Fleet remains operational and in good working order from the date that it is fitted throughout the Franchise Period. The Franchisee shall also ensure that, if such technology is not fitted to one hundred per cent (100%) of the Train Fleet, the individual rolling stock vehicles that have been fitted with such technology shall be rotated around the Routes as necessary to satisfy such request for data as is made by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 1.1. The Secretary of State acting reasonably shall have the right to obtain such other information that the Franchisee has, ought properly to have or could reasonably obtain which may provide a more detailed or accurate view of the extent of use by passengers of the Passenger Services including information about ingress and egress of passengers at ticket gates at Stations.

1.3 The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State all of the information generated by the technology specified in paragraph 3 and/or by using manual counts pursuant to paragraph 2 including the information specified in paragraph 1.1:

- (a) promptly following its collation and in any case within the following timescales:
  - (i) in the case of data collected automatically by the Count Equipment and capable of being transmitted directly and automatically to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), within forty-eight (48) hours of its collation;
  - (ii) in the case of data collected automatically by the Count Equipment but not capable of direct and automatic transmission to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), within one (1) calendar month of its collation; and
  - (iii) in the case of data collected by manual count, within one (1) calendar month of its collation;
- (b) using such systems, in such a format and to such level of disaggregation as the Secretary of State may reasonably require, and in a format which is capable of being read by the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate) (which shall include providing data which is not encrypted);

- (c) either by transmitting such data directly to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate) or by ensuring that the database provider can pull and transmit such data to the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), as appropriate according to the nature of the Franchisee’s Count Equipment from time to time or by providing such data to the Secretary of State by such other means as the Secretary of State notifies to the Franchisee from time to time; and
- (d) to the extent required by the Secretary of State, by providing the Secretary of State with direct remote access to the system used by the Franchisee to collect such information such that the Secretary of State is able to download such information,

and such information may be used by the Secretary of State for such purposes as the Secretary of State may reasonably require including for the purposes of assisting the Secretary of State’s decision making on train service requirements, infrastructure, station and rolling stock investment, the best use of the network and the alleviation of overcrowding.

1.4 The Franchisee shall use any flagging system contained within the RPC Database to highlight such events and occurrences as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify in writing from time to time.

**2. Manual Passenger Counts**

2.1 The Secretary of State shall have the right to require the Franchisee to carry out manual counts in relation to some or all of the Passenger Services at such times as may be required and in such manner (including as to levels of accuracy and the number of days) as may be specified from time to time by the Secretary of State including if, exceptionally, the Franchisee is unable to comply with its obligations to provide data generated by the technology specified in paragraph 3.

2.2 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to audit such counts (whether by specimen checks at the time of such counts, verification of proper compliance with the manner approved by the Secretary of State or otherwise). In the event that such audit reveals, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, a material error, or a reasonable likelihood of material error, in such counts, the Secretary of State may require the counts to be repeated or the results adjusted as the Secretary of State considers appropriate, and in these circumstances the Franchisee shall pay to the Secretary of State the costs of any such audits.

**3. Technology for Obtaining the Information referred to in paragraph 1.2**

3.1 The technology to be used for the purpose of paragraph 1.2 shall be:

- (a) for Class 390 Pendolino, loadweigh, or
- (b) for new rolling stock which is admitted to the train fleet, doorway infrared sensing or spectroscopic CCTV.

3.2 The technology to be used for the purposes of paragraph 1.2 shall be fitted to:

- (a) in the case of any brand new rolling stock which is admitted to the Train Fleet, one hundred per cent (100%) of it from the date that such rolling stock is properly admitted; and
- (b) in the case of all other rolling stock, by 1 April 2022, to every vehicle comprised within no less than thirty-five per cent (35%) of such rolling stock units included in the Train Fleet from time to time in aggregate.

3.3 Without limiting the Secretary of State’s rights under paragraph 1.1 of this Schedule 1.5, the technology specified in paragraph 3.1 above shall be used to provide counts in respect of, in any period of not less than twelve (12) weeks, at least two (2) of each of the Timetabled Services, and each count shall be carried out on each rolling stock unit comprising a particular train. The Franchisee may only use a method of extrapolation and use extrapolated data to provide a reliable estimate of a full train’s count with the Secretary of State’s prior written approval of the use of extrapolated data and the method of extrapolation (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed). The Franchisee shall comply with its obligation under this paragraph 3 from the date(s) such rolling stock is incorporated into the Train Fleet.

3.4 The Parties acknowledge that the information supplied under paragraph 1.1 above, and any product of it created by the RPC Database or the Preliminary Database (as appropriate), may constitute Confidential Information to which Schedule 17 (Confidentiality, Freedom of Information and Data Protection) applies.

#### 4. Customer Relationship Management (CRM) Data

4.1 The Franchisee shall ensure that any CRM System is the property of the Franchisee or is licensed to the Franchisee on terms which have been approved by the Secretary of State (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) and that any CRM Data obtained by or on behalf of the Franchisee shall be:

- (a) obtained on terms such that the Franchisee shall be the Controller of such data; and
- (b) the property of the Franchisee.

4.2 In relation to any CRM Data obtained by or on behalf of the Franchisee, the Franchisee shall:

- (a) ensure that the CRM Data is collected and processed by or on behalf of the Franchisee in accordance with the Data Protection Legislation;
- (b) without prejudice to paragraph 4.2(a) ensure that the fairness principle of the Data Protection Legislation is satisfied including by issuing all relevant privacy notices in relation to its collection and processing of the CRM Data;
- (c) without prejudice to paragraph 4.2(a) ensure that there is a lawful basis for its collection and processing of the CRM Data;
- (d) without prejudice to paragraph 4.2(a) ensure that the principles of fairness and lawfulness are satisfied in particular in respect of the disclosure of the CRM Data to any Successor Operator and/or the Secretary of State such that the CRM Data may be processed by any Successor Operator for the same purposes as are relevant to the processing of the CRM Data by the Franchisee; and
- (e) without prejudice to paragraph 4.2(a) ensure that where consents are required under the Data Protection Legislation for the processing of the CRM Data by the Franchisee and any Successor Operator (including in relation to marketing, sign up for notifications or general alerts, sign up for newsletters, and (as relevant) processing of Special Categories of Personal Data) all such consents are sought in such a way as to enable any Successor Operator to process the CRM Data for the same purposes as are relevant to the processing of it by the Franchisee.

4.3 The consents referred to in paragraph 4.2(e) shall be sought in such manner as shall from time to time be approved by the Secretary of State (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) and shall be on terms such as shall permit, in each case in compliance with the Data Protection Legislation:

- (a) the Franchisee to disclose such CRM Data to any Successor Operator and/or the Secretary of State; and
- (b) any such Successor Operator to process such CRM Data in the manner contemplated by paragraph 4.2.

4.4 The Franchisee shall:

- (a) disclose, publish, share, provide and otherwise make available the CRM Data to any person (including a Successor Operator or any participant involved with the re-letting of the Franchisee); and
- (b) provide access to any CRM System,

in each case pursuant to the terms of the Franchise Agreement (together, the "CRM Data Obligations") to the extent that compliance with the CRM Data Obligations is in accordance with the Data Protection Legislation.

**5. Yield Management Data**

5.1 The Franchisee shall ensure that any Yield Management Data and Yield Management System are the property of the Franchisee or are licensed to the Franchisee on terms which have been approved by the Secretary of State (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).

**5.2 NOT USED.**

5.3 The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State in writing of the full names and registered office addresses of the entities which from time to time are hosting or storing any of the Yield Management Data, or which are otherwise holding within their possession or control any of the Yield Management Data, together with the location(s) in which the Yield Management Data is hosted, stored or otherwise held. In cases where the hosting, storage or holding of the Yield Management Data occurs in location(s) which are outside of the United Kingdom the notification shall include details of the relevant country(ies) or territory(ies).

5.4 The Franchisee hereby acknowledges that the Secretary of State legitimately wishes to have knowledge of the locations in which the Yield Management Data is hosted, stored or otherwise held from time to time (whether inside or outside of the United Kingdom) given that all such information would be relevant in the event of any transfer of the Franchise to a Successor Operator.

**6. NOT USED****7. Rail Passenger Counts Database**

7.1 Subject to compliance by the Franchisee with its obligations set out in this Schedule 1.5, the Secretary of State shall as soon as reasonably practicable following the Start Date:

- (a) use reasonable endeavours to set up and thereafter maintain the RPC Database;
- (b) use reasonable endeavours to populate the RPC Database with such Actual Passenger Demand information as the Franchisee shall provide pursuant to the Franchisee's obligations contained elsewhere in the Franchise Agreement and any other information that the Secretary of State shall desire; and
- (c) use reasonable endeavours to provide the Franchisee with log-in details to the RPC Database in order to allow the Franchisee to access Actual Passenger Demand information that has been provided by the Franchisee, any Infrastructure Manager Data, any Third Party Data and to generate reports from the RPC Database.

7.2 The RPC Database is not intended to be used as the sole basis for any business decision. The Secretary of State makes no representation as to the accuracy and/or completeness of:

- (a) any data or information contained in the RPC Database;
- (b) the raw Actual Passenger Demand information provided by the Franchisee or any Infrastructure Manager Data or any Third Party Data (as inputted to the RPC Database by whatever means); or
- (c) any product of that Actual Passenger Demand information, Network Rail Data and/or Third Party Data.

7.3

- (a) The Secretary of State is not liable for:
  - (i) any inaccuracy, incompleteness or other error in Actual Passenger Demand information, Infrastructure Manager Data, Third Party Data or product of the above provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee, Infrastructure Manager, NR or a third party; or
  - (ii) any failure of the RPC Database to achieve any particular business result for the Franchisee. For the avoidance of doubt, it is the responsibility of the Franchisee to decide the appropriateness of using the RPC Database to achieve its own business results; or

- (iii) any loss, destruction, corruption, degradation, inaccuracy or damage of or to the Actual Passenger Demand information following its submission to the RPC Database; or
  - (iv) any loss or damage to the property or assets of the Franchisee (tangible or intangible) as a result of a contravention of paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 1.5; or
  - (v) any indirect, special or consequential loss or damage.
- (b) The Secretary of State's total liability for the duration of the Franchise Agreement in respect of a contravention of its obligations under paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 1.5 for all other heads of loss or damage which can lawfully be limited shall be limited to the extent to which the Secretary of State is successful in recovering the equivalent loss from such entity to whom the Secretary of State subcontracts its obligations under paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 1.5 (the "**Subcontractor**"), subject to the following provisions:
- (i) if reasonably requested by the Franchisee within three (3) months of incurring such loss or damage, the Secretary of State shall use reasonable endeavours to recover the equivalent losses from the Subcontractor;
  - (ii) it shall not be reasonable for the Franchisee to make a request pursuant to paragraph 7.3(b)(i) above if the value of the Franchisee's losses does not exceed ten thousand pounds sterling (£10,000) x RPI (RPI is the quotient of the Retail Prices Index for the January which immediately precedes the commencement of the relevant Franchisee Year divided by the Retail Prices Index for January 2019 provided that, for the first Franchisee Year, RPI shall be one);
  - (iii) prior to accounting to the Franchisee for any sums recovered from the Subcontractor pursuant to this paragraph 7.3(b), the Secretary of State shall be entitled to deduct and retain any reasonable costs and expenses incurred in pursuing such a claim which the Secretary of State does not successfully recover from the Subcontractor; and
  - (iv) the Secretary of State shall be entitled to deduct from any sums recovered from the Subcontractor pursuant to this paragraph 7.3(b) such sum as the Secretary of State reasonably deems appropriate to take account of the Secretary of State's actual or potential liability to other train operating companies pursuant to equivalent arrangements with them, with a view to distributing any sums received from the Subcontractor fairly between the various operators.
- (c) The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to mitigate any losses incurred by the Franchisee as a result of a contravention by the Secretary of State of the Secretary of State's obligations contained in paragraph 7.1 of this Schedule 1.5.
- 7.4 The Parties acknowledge that it is intended that the RPC Database will also contain actual passenger demand information relating to franchisees other than the Franchisee but a franchisee shall have access only to information relating to its own franchise (in the case of the Franchisee, via the log on details provided pursuant to paragraph 7.1(c)). For the avoidance of doubt, the licence granted at paragraph 8.6 shall only permit the usage of the RPC Database, Derivative Output and Intellectual Property Rights related to the Actual Passenger Demand information supplied by the Franchisee.
- 7.5 Without prejudice to Schedule 14.4 (Designation of Franchise Assets), paragraphs 2.1 and 3 of Schedule 15.1 (Reletting Provisions), Schedule 15.4 (Provisions Applying on and after Termination) or any other rights of the Secretary of State, the Franchisee agrees that, following the expiry or termination by whatever means of the Franchise Agreement and any Continuation Document, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to allow access to the Franchisee's Actual Passenger Demand information by way of granting access to that area of the RPC Database or otherwise to any future operator of the Passenger Services (whether or not in direct succession to the Franchisee) or to such part of the Actual Passenger Demand information as relates to the part of the franchise which is being taken over by such future operator.

**8. Intellectual Property Rights and General Provisions**

- 8.1 All Intellectual Property Rights in the RPC Database and Derivative Output shall at all times remain owned by the Secretary of State and to the extent that any rights in the RPC Database vest in the Franchisee by operation of law, the Franchisee hereby assigns such rights to the Secretary of State.
- 8.2 Subject to Schedule 14.4 (Designation of Franchise Assets) and Schedule 15.4 (Provisions Applying on and after Termination), all Intellectual Property Rights in the Actual Passenger Demand information will at all times remain owned by the Franchisee and (subject as previously stated) to the extent that any rights in the Actual Passenger Demand information vest in the Secretary of State by operation of law, the Secretary of State hereby assigns such rights to the Franchisee.
- 8.3 All Intellectual Property Rights in the Infrastructure Manager Data will at all times remain owned by the relevant NR entity or Infrastructure Manager entity and to the extent that any rights in the Infrastructure Manager Data vest in the Secretary of State or the Franchisee by operation of law, the Secretary of State and/or the Franchisee (as applicable) will enter into a separate agreement with the relevant Infrastructure Manager entity to assign such rights to it.
- 8.4 All Intellectual Property Rights in the Third Party Data will at all times remain owned by the third party from whom they have been obtained and to the extent that any rights in the Third Party Data vest in the Secretary of State or the Franchisee by operation of law, the Secretary of State and/or the Franchisee (as applicable) will enter into a separate agreement with the relevant Third Party to assign such rights to it.
- 8.5 Subject to Schedule 14.4 (Designation of Franchise Assets) and Schedule 15.4 (Provisions Applying on and after Termination), each Party:
- (a) acknowledges and agrees that it shall not acquire or claim any title to any of the other Party's Intellectual Property Rights (or those of the other Party's licensors) by virtue of the rights granted to it under this Agreement or through its use of such Intellectual Property Rights; and
  - (b) agrees that it will not, at any time, do, or omit to do, anything which is likely to prejudice the other Party's ownership (or the other Party's licensors' ownership) of such Intellectual Property Rights.
- 8.6 The Secretary of State hereby grants, for the duration of the Franchise Period, the Franchisee a non-exclusive, non-transferable licence to use:
- (a) the RPC Database;
  - (b) any Derivative Output; and
  - (c) all Intellectual Property Rights in the same,
- in the United Kingdom for the purposes of accessing the Actual Passenger Demand information by using the functionality of the RPC Database.
- 8.7 Without limiting any other rights the Secretary of State may have, the Franchisee hereby grants the Secretary of State a perpetual, non-terminable, non-exclusive licence (which is transferable and/or capable of being sub-licensed in the circumstances set out in this paragraph 8.7) to use the Actual Passenger Demand information and all Intellectual Property Rights in the same:
- (a) by including them in the RPC Database; and/or
  - (b) by including them in the Preliminary Database; and/or
  - (c) whether included in the RPC Database, the Preliminary Database or in any other format for such purposes as the Secretary of State may reasonably require including for the purposes of assisting the Secretary of State's decision making on train service requirements, infrastructure, station and rolling stock investment, the best use of the network and the alleviation of overcrowding; and/or

- (d) to the extent permitted by the other provisions of the Franchise Agreement to share, disclose, or publish the same and transfer and/or sub-licence and permit the use and sharing, disclosing or publishing for the purposes it is shared or disclosed; and/or
- (e) to allow a future operator of the Passenger Services (whether or not in direct succession to the Franchisee) to view and access such Actual Passenger Demand information (whether via the RPC Database or otherwise) as directly relates to the services that it will be running,

and such rights to use the Actual Passenger Demand information and all Intellectual Property Rights pursuant to this paragraph 8.7 shall continue following expiry or termination of this Agreement.

- 8.8 Paragraphs 7.2, 7.3, 8.1, 8.2 and 8.7 of this Schedule 1.5 shall continue in force after expiry or termination of the Franchise Agreement or any Continuation Document, together with any other provisions which expressly or impliedly continue in force after the expiry or termination of the Franchise Agreement or any Continuation Document.
- 8.9 The Parties intend that the provisions of The Contract (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999 will apply to allow the relevant NR entity or Infrastructure Manager entity to rely on and enforce against a third party the provisions of paragraph 8.3 of this Schedule 1.5.

Withdrawn March 2024

SCHEDULE 1.6A

The Rolling Stock

1. Purpose

1.1 This Schedule records the rolling stock vehicles which shall be comprised in the Train Fleet from the Start Date (Original Rolling Stock shown in Table 1) and further additional rolling stock that will become part of the Train Fleet during the Franchise Term (Specified Additional Rolling Stock shown in Table 2 and Unspecified Additional Rolling Stock shown in Table 3) and key information in relation to it. It includes other requirements in relation to the Train Fleet including in relation to rolling stock testing and commissioning and compliance with the requirements of the Secretary of State in relation to the specification of the Train Fleet including in relation to baby changing facilities and Controlled Emission Toilets.

2. The Composition/Deployment of the Train Fleet

2.1 The Train Fleet consists of:

- (a) from the Start Date until the earlier of the expiry of the ICWC Term and the lease expiry dates referred to in Column 6 of Table 1 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 the rolling stock vehicles set out in Table 1 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 ("**Original Rolling Stock**") with the Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit referred to in Column 3 and Column 4 of Table 1 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6;
- (b) from the dates set out in Column 6 of Table 2 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6, until the earlier of the expiry of the ICWC Term and the lease expiry dates referred to in Column 7 of Table 2 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 the rolling stock vehicles including new build or cascaded rolling stock ("**Specified Additional Rolling Stock**") set out in Table 2, in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 with the Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit referred to in Column 3 and Column 4 of Table 2;
- (c) from the relevant dates specified in paragraph 2.3, each Unspecified Additional Rolling Stock; and
- (d) NOT USED.

2.2 NOT USED.

2.3 The Franchisee shall:

- (a) within twelve (12) months of the Start Date, enter into Rolling Stock Leases (subject to compliance with all other relevant provisions of this Agreement including in relation to Rolling Stock Related Contracts) in respect of, and
- (b) by no later than each date specified in Column 1 of Table 3 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6, introduce into revenue earning passenger service,

the quantum of rolling stock specified in Column 2 of Table 3 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 and which (unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State) provides at least the minimum Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit and has at least the minimum reliability, capability and quality characteristics referred to in Column 3, Column 4 and Column 5 (respectively) of the Table 3 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 ("**Unspecified Additional Rolling Stock**").

2.4 The Passenger Carrying Capacity of any rolling stock vehicles shall be as set out in Tables 1 or 2 or 3 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6 or as determined by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 3.4 of this Schedule 1.6 (as applicable).

2.5 The Franchisee shall procure that the rolling stock vehicles described in the Tables 1 or 2 or 3 in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.6, with the capacity and other characteristics referred to there, are available for deployment in the provision of the Passenger Services to the extent required by the Timetable and Train Plan during the periods referred to therein.

### 3. Changes to the Train Fleet

3.1 The Franchisee shall maintain the composition of the Train Fleet during the Franchise Period, unless the Secretary of State otherwise agrees, such that there are no changes to the Train Fleet, including changes:

- (a) to the classes or types;
- (b) to the interior configurations; or
- (c) which may reduce the journey time capabilities,

of any rolling stock vehicles specified in the Train Fleet.

3.2 NOT USED.

3.3 During the Franchise Period, the Franchisee shall advise the Secretary of State of any rolling stock vehicles damaged beyond economic repair or likely to be unavailable for service for a period of three (3) consecutive Reporting Periods or more.

3.4 If any change is made to the Train Fleet in accordance with this Schedule 1.6, the Secretary of State may, after consulting the Franchisee, determine the Passenger Carrying Capacity of any rolling stock vehicles or class of rolling stock vehicles comprising the Train Fleet following such change. The Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee of the Secretary of State's determination of any such Passenger Carrying Capacity.

### 4. Rolling Stock Testing and Commissioning

4.1 The Franchisee shall, to the extent reasonably requested by the Secretary of State and subject to payment of the Franchisee's reasonable costs by the relevant third party, co-operate with any third party which the Secretary of State may specify (including a Successor Operator, a rolling stock vehicle manufacturer or Network Rail or the Secretary of State) in connection with the testing and commissioning of new rolling stock vehicles or any new equipment to be fitted to rolling stock vehicles (whether such rolling stock vehicles are new or otherwise).

4.2 The co-operation referred to in paragraph 4.1 shall not unreasonably disrupt the provision and operation of the Franchise Services and may include:

- (a) the movement of test trains within and around depots;
- (b) making available suitably qualified personnel to operate test trains along the Routes and provide information on the Routes;
- (c) making Train Slots available for such purposes;
- (d) granting or procuring the grant of access to the third party and its representatives to any relevant facilities; and
- (e) the delivery of rolling stock vehicles to specific locations.

### 5. Controlled Emission Toilets

5.1 The Franchisee shall ensure that all rolling stock vehicles comprised in the Train Fleet used for the provision of the Passenger Services which have on board toilet facilities shall be fitted with Controlled Emission Toilets with a tank capacity sufficient for the requirements of the Passenger Services by no later than 1 January 2020 so that for the remainder of the Franchise Term all rolling stock vehicles which have on board toilets are exclusively fitted with Controlled Emission Toilets. Any newly built rolling stock which becomes part of the Train Fleet prior to 1 January 2020 which have on board toilet facilities shall be fitted exclusively with Controlled Emission Toilets.

5.2 The Franchisee shall ensure that the contents of the toilet retention tanks relating to each Controlled Emission Toilet fitted on rolling stock vehicles in accordance with the requirements of paragraph 5.1 are disposed of in a safe and hygienic manner at suitable facilities designed for these purposes including at Depots and stabling points.

**6. Baby Changing Facilities**

6.1 The Franchisee shall ensure that as soon as reasonably practicable but in any event by no later than 1 January 2020 each train operated by the Franchisee in delivering the Passenger Services that is fitted with toilet facilities is also fitted with such number of baby change facilities as is necessary to be compliant with the requirements of the PRM TSI.

**7. Measurement of Traction Energy Usage**

7.1 The Franchisee shall ensure that all rolling stock units that form part of the Train Fleet are able to measure and monitor fuel use as soon as reasonably practicable, and in the case of electric traction, enable the Franchisee to be a **"Metered Train Operator"** as defined by Network Rail's Traction Electricity Rules.

Withdrawn March 2024

APPENDIX TO SCHEDULE 1.6A

The Composition of the Train Fleet

1. Original Rolling Stock

**Explanatory Note A:** Where in Column 6 both a Scheduled Lease Expiry Date and an Early Redelivery Date are specified in relation to one or more specified units (each being a “Specified Unit”) the Lease Expiry Date for the Specified Units shall be the Early Redelivery Date provided that where any unit shown in Table 2 or Table 3 below as replacing any Specified Unit from the Early Delivery Date is delivered after the Early Redelivery Date such Specified Unit shall remain in the Train Fleet until the relevant Scheduled Lease Expiry Date or such earlier date as the Secretary of State acting reasonably may agree.

Table 1 (Original Rolling Stock)								
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3		Column 4		Column 5	Column 6	
Class of vehicle/unit	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Standard Class Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit		First Class Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit		Owner/Lessor	Lease expiry date(s) (See Explanatory Note A above)	
							Scheduled Lease Expiry Date	Early Redelivery Date (if any)
		Seats	Wheelchair spaces	Seats	Wheelchair Spaces			
390 <sup>1</sup>	35 x 11 car	444	2	145	1	Angel Trains	31 March 2026 <sup>2</sup>	N/A
390 <sup>3</sup>	35 x 11 car	508	2	99	1	Angel Trains	31 March 2026 <sup>2</sup>	N/A
390 <sup>1</sup>	21 x 9 car	370	2	99	1	Angel Trains	31 March 2026 <sup>2</sup>	N/A
390 <sup>3</sup>	21 x 9 car	370	2	99	1	Angel Trains	31 March 2026 <sup>2</sup>	N/A
221	20 x 5 car	230	1	26	1	Beacon Rail	10 December 2022 <sup>4</sup>	29 May 2022

Notes to Table 1

- 1 Table row applies until December 2022 Passenger Change Date
- 2 The Scheduled Lease Expiry Date applies subject to provisions in the relevant leases for extension.
- 3 Table row applies from December 2022 Passenger Change Date.
- 4 The actual lease end date for each vehicle in this fleet shall be in accordance with the achieved profile of the acceptance of the corresponding Unspecified Additional Rolling Stock plus four weeks, as further specified in paragraph 35.2 of Schedule 6.2A and Column 6 of Table 3.

Withdrawn March 2024

2. Specified Additional Rolling Stock

Table 2 (Specified Additional Rolling Stock)										
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3			Column 4		Column 5	Column 6	Column 7	Column 8
Class of vehicle /unit	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Standard Class Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit			First Class Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit		Owner/Lessor	Lease start date(s)	Lease expiry date(s)	Identity of any unit in Table 1 (Original Rolling Stock) intended to be replaced by the Specified Additional Rolling Stock and the date of replacement
		Seats	Wheelchair spaces	Standing	Seats	Wheelchair spaces				

3. Unspecified Additional Rolling Stock

Table 3 (Unspecified Additional Rolling Stock)								
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3			Column 4		Column 5	Column 6
Date of introduction into revenue earning passenger service  Note 1	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Standard Class Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit			First Class Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit		Characteristics (e.g. minimum reliability, capability and quality such as CET, automated passenger counts or other characteristics of the rolling stock specified in the Franchisee's proposal)	Identity of any unit in Table 1 (Original Rolling Stock) intended to be replaced by the Unspecified Additional Rolling Stock and the date of replacement  Note 1
		Seats	Wheelchair spaces	Standing	Seats	Wheelchair spaces		
Passenger Change Date in December 2022	10 x 7-car EMU	374	1	N/A	40	1	As set out in paragraph 34.1 of Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations)	10 x 5-car Class 221. Each Class 221 unit to be replaced no earlier than four weeks after acceptance of each new 7-car EMU (as described in paragraph 35.2 of Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations)).

Table 3 (Unspecified Additional Rolling Stock)								
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3			Column 4		Column 5	Column 6
Date of introduction into revenue earning passenger service  Note 1	Number of vehicles in fleet and unit configuration	Standard Class Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit			First Class Passenger Carrying Capacity per unit		Characteristics (e.g. minimum reliability, capability and quality such as CET, automated passenger counts or other characteristics of the rolling stock specified in the Franchisee's proposal)	Identity of any unit in Table 1 (Original Rolling Stock) intended to be replaced by the Unspecified Additional Rolling Stock and the date of replacement  Note 1
		Seats	Wheelchair spaces	Standing	Seats	Wheelchair spaces		
Passenger Change Date in December 2022	13 x 5-car Bi-mode unit	242	1	N/A	24	1	As set out in paragraph 34.1 of Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations)	10 x 5-car Class 221. Each Class 221 unit to be replaced no earlier than four weeks after acceptance of each of the first 10 new Bi-mode units (as described in paragraph 35.2 of Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations))

**Note to Table 3**

Note 1: The actual lease end date for this Original Rolling Stock shall be in accordance with the achieved profile of the acceptance of the corresponding Unspecified Additional Rolling Stock plus four weeks, as further specified in paragraph 35.2 of Schedule 6.2A and Note 4 to Table 1.

## SCHEDULE 1.7A

## Stations

**1. Station Asset Management**

1.1 NOT USED.

1.2 By no later than 1 April 2023 the Franchisee shall prepare and provide to the Secretary of State for approval (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) the Station Asset Management Plan.

1.3 Where the Secretary of State does not approve the draft Station Asset Management Plan submitted to it, the Franchisee shall make:

- (a) such amendments to it as the Secretary of State shall reasonably direct; and
- (b) provide such additional information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

1.4 From the date of approval, the Franchisee shall implement and comply with the Station Asset Management Plan.

1.5 The Station Asset Management Plan shall:

- (a) include the information set out in paragraph 1.6; and
- (b) meet the requirements of paragraph 1.7,

and it shall be reasonable for the Secretary of State to not approve a plan which does not include such information or meet such requirements.

1.6 The Franchisee shall ensure that the Station Asset Management Plan in relation to each Station shall include the following:

- (a) the details of all maintenance, repair and renewal activity undertaken by the Franchisee since the Start Date;
- (b) the details of any maintenance, repair and renewal activity which the Franchisee has not completed or not completed within the specified time frame set out in any Station Asset Management Plan together with reasons;
- (c) the details of the maintenance, repair and renewal activity undertaken since the Start Date or planned by Network Rail, any Local Authority, any Community Rail Partnership and any other relevant stakeholder, which the Franchisee is aware of;
- (d) the assumptions that the Franchisee has made about the current state and future degradation of assets at the Station at the time the Station Asset Management Plan was prepared or, if an asset becomes an asset at the Station on a later date, the assumptions of the Franchisee about the current state and future degradation of each relevant asset on the date that it becomes such an asset at the Station;
- (e) the details of under and over provision of assets at the Station at the time the Station Asset Management Plan was prepared given current and projected future customer volumes and characteristics, reasonable customer demands and any implications of the commencement of or operation of the High Speed Services and planned enhancements or removals to accommodate changing customer volumes and characteristics, reasonable customer demands and any implications of the commencement or operation of the High Speed Services;
- (f) the plans for improving the environmental performance of Stations, including where appropriate, plans for:
  - (i) energy metering and data management, including measurement and verification plans for measures adopted;

- (ii) lighting and lighting controls;
  - (iii) heating and heating controls;
  - (iv) auxiliary power uses;
  - (v) other energy efficiency measures;
  - (vi) renewable energy generation;
  - (vii) water efficiency measures;
  - (viii) waste reduction;
  - (ix) identification of opportunities for recycling or reuse of assets; and
  - (x) identification of opportunities for local sourcing of assets and asset materials;
- (g) the plans to ensure that delivery of Station Services is resilient to periods of extreme weather and minimises disruption to passengers;
- (h) the plans to ensure that maintenance, repair, renewal, enhancement and other building works to be carried out at such Stations is consistent with:
- (i) the Principles of Inclusive Design; and
  - (ii) the Security in the Design of Stations Guidance; and
- (i) the plans to ensure that activity at such Stations is consistent with the Network Rail Asset Management Policy.

1.7 In addition, the Franchisee shall ensure that the Station Asset Management Plan:

- (a) shall cover a period of no less than forty (40) years from the date that it is created or revised and updated in accordance with this Schedule 1.7, as if the Franchisee was to operate each of the Stations for such forty (40) year period; and
- (b) is developed in accordance, and complies, with guidance and policies (including the guidance documents known as "*Subject Specific Guidelines*" published by the Institute of Asset Management (or such appropriate replacement guidance)) which are commensurate with those that would be referred to by a competent, skilled and experienced train operator using an asset management planning approach, in particular in respect of the balance of maintenance and renewal of each asset type.

1.8 Any amendments to the Station Asset Management Plan must be agreed by the Secretary of State (such consent not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed).

1.9 The Franchisee shall ensure that all renewal, enhancement and other building works at Stations are implemented in accordance with the Principles of Inclusive Design.

1.10 **Updating the Station Asset Management Plan**

- (a) By no later than each anniversary of the date on which the Franchisee submitted the Station Asset Management Plan in accordance with paragraph 1.2, the Franchisee shall have reviewed the Station Asset Management Plan and shall submit to the Secretary of State for approval (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed) a draft updated version of the Station Asset Management Plan.
- (b) The updated draft Station Asset Management Plan shall include and reflect the following:

- (i) a schedule of any revisions to the current Station Asset Management Plan and a brief summary of the rationale supporting any change for review and approval by the Secretary of State;
  - (ii) any changed and developing circumstances and the requirements of the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation;
  - (iii) where relevant, the outcomes of, and the Franchisee's responses to the stakeholder consultation process described in paragraph 4; and
  - (iv) the information required in accordance with paragraphs 1.6 and 1.7 of this Schedule 1.7 save that the reference to the "Start Date" in paragraph 1.6(a) shall be read as the date on which the Station Asset Management Plan is reviewed and updated by the Franchisee in accordance with this paragraph 1.10 of this Schedule 1.7.
- (c) If:
- (i) the Secretary of State approves an updated draft Station Asset Management Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 1.10(a), such document shall become the then current Station Asset Management Plan; or
  - (ii) the Secretary of State does not approve an updated draft Station Asset Management Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 1.10(a), then the Franchisee shall make:
    - (A) such amendments to it as the Secretary of State shall reasonably direct; and
    - (B) provide such additional information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.
- (d) The Franchisee shall put in place such arrangements as are necessary (to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State) to ensure that the Station Asset Management Plan is (and continues to be maintained) in a format acceptable to the Secretary of State which is capable of being transferred to a Successor Operator as part of the Handover Package so that the Successor Operator is able to access, use and amend the Station Asset Management Plan using the same format.

#### 1.11 Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation Certificate

- (a) The Franchisee shall:
- (i) ensure that it applies for and obtains the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation by no later than the date falling twelve (12) months from the date on which the Franchisee submitted its Station Asset Management Plan in accordance with paragraph 1.2;
  - (ii) promptly upon receipt by the Franchisee, provide to the Secretary of State a certificate of accreditation issued by and organisation accredited by the United Kingdom Accreditation System (UKAS) which has been signed by a director of the Franchisee and which confirms that the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation has been obtained (the "**Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation Certificate**"); and
  - (iii) maintain the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation from the date that it is required to be achieved in accordance with paragraph 1.11(a)(i) for the remainder of the Franchise Period.
- (b) If the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation is at any time lost or the Franchisee fails to secure such then the Franchisee shall report that fact to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event within ten (10) Weekdays of the Franchisee becoming aware of such fact.
- (c) From the date upon which the Franchisee notified the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 1.11(b) (or should have notified the Secretary of State having complied with the provisions of this Agreement), the Franchisee shall:

- (i) re-secure such accreditation as soon as reasonably practicable and in any case within three (3) months; and
  - (ii) report to the Secretary of State every Reporting Period on the measures it is proposing to take, and is taking, to achieve such restoration of the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation.
- (d) Where the Franchisee fails to secure the Station Asset Management Plan Accreditation pursuant to paragraph 1.11(c) within three (3) months of the date of such accreditation being lost or failed to be secured (as the case may be) such failure shall constitute a contravention of the Franchise Agreement and the Secretary of State may issue a Remedial Plan Notice pursuant to Schedule 10.1 (Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement) and the provisions of Schedule 10 (Remedies, Events of Default and Termination Events) shall apply.

## 2. Grey Assets

### 2.1

- (a) The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to agree a comprehensive list of all Grey Assets with Network Rail within twelve (12) months of the Start Date.
- (b) If at any time during the Franchise Period the Franchisee reasonably considers that an asset not included in the list prepared pursuant to paragraph 2.1(a) is a Grey Asset it shall notify Network Rail accordingly and use all reasonable endeavours to agree whether or not such asset should be considered to be a Grey Asset as soon as reasonably practicable.

2.2 If the Franchisee reaches agreement with Network Rail that any asset is a Grey Asset pursuant to paragraph 2.1 above the Franchisee shall:

- (a) consult with Network Rail and, where reasonably necessary and agreed by Network Rail, carry out a joint inspection of each such Grey Asset; and
- (b) use all reasonable endeavours to agree with Network Rail the proper allocation of responsibility in relation to each such Grey Asset (including whether such Grey Asset falls within or outside the boundary of an area subject to a Station Lease) on a reasonable basis consistent with the document entitled "*The Secretary of State's baseline principles for establishing asset responsibilities at stations*" (as it may be updated from time to time). The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to reach such agreement as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event within:
  - (i) twenty four (24) months of the Start Date in the case of Grey Assets identified pursuant to paragraph 2.1(a); or
  - (ii) twenty four (24) months of any such asset being identified to Network Rail as a Grey Asset in the case of Grey Assets identified pursuant to paragraph 2.1(b).

2.3 Where the Franchisee is unable to agree with Network Rail the proper allocation of responsibility under the relevant Station Lease in relation to any Grey Asset pursuant to paragraph 2.2(b) (including whether such Grey Asset falls within or outside the boundary of an area subject to a Station Lease), the Franchisee shall refer such matter to the dispute resolution process under the terms of the relevant Station Lease.

2.4 The Franchisee shall ensure, that where the allocation of responsibility for a Grey Asset is agreed pursuant to paragraph 2.2 or determined pursuant to paragraph 2.3), such Grey Asset is:

- (a) to the extent that a Station Asset Management Plan has not been submitted to the Secretary of State as at the date of such agreement or determination (as the case may be), included in the Station Asset Management Plan to be submitted to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 1.2; or
- (b) to the extent that a Station Asset Management Plan has been submitted to the Secretary of State as at the date of such agreement or determination (as the case may be), is included in the next update to the Station Asset Management Plan to be submitted to the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 1.10 immediately after the date of such agreement or determination.

2.5 The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the allocation of responsibility for each Grey Assets agreed pursuant to paragraph 2.2 or determined pursuant to paragraph 2.3 shall be recorded via an amendment to the Station Lease and, where applicable, by an amendment to the relevant Station Access Conditions as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event within thirty-six (36) months of the date upon which allocation of responsibility for each such Grey Asset is so agreed or determined. The Franchisee shall obtain the prior written consent of the Secretary of State to any such amendment to the Station Lease and/or Station Access Conditions.

### 3. Station Social and Commercial Development Plan

3.1 From the Start Date, the Franchisee shall implement, resource and comply with the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan for the duration of the Franchise Term that as a minimum must:

- (a) provide the Franchisee's initial view of potentially suitable sites at Stations to be refurbished for use by community groups and social enterprises for commercial development;
- (b) be for a period of 10 years and be reviewed on a rolling basis; and
- (c) set out how the Franchisee shall:
  - (i) identify schemes to develop currently redundant or under-utilised station buildings and facilities for use by community groups and social enterprises or for commercial development including schemes which sustain and enhance the viability of existing facilities at Stations or lead to the development of new facilities including through appropriate sub-leasing of Station buildings;
  - (ii) consult with customers and the community on the concerns, issues, opportunities and risks relating to the Stations and the priorities for investment;
  - (iii) effectively evaluate, prioritise and develop such schemes taking account of customer and community views; and
  - (iv) implement the schemes in accordance with their allocated priority.

3.2 Any amendments to the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan must be agreed by the Secretary of State in accordance with this paragraph 3.

3.3 By no later than the end of the first Franchisee Year, and on each subsequent anniversary of this date, the Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State for approval (such approval not to be unreasonably withheld) a revised Station Social and Commercial Development Plan updated in accordance with the requirements of paragraph 3.4 below.

3.4 Each updated version of the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan shall:

- (a) incorporate a schedule of any revisions made to the previous Station Social and Commercial Development Plan and a brief summary of the rationale supporting those revisions;
- (b) appropriately reflect changed and developing circumstances where relevant; and
- (c) appropriately reflect the outcomes of, and the Franchisee's responses to, the stakeholder consultation process described in paragraph 4, below.

3.5 The Franchisee shall ensure that the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan shall be updated so that following each update it continues to cover at least a period of ten (10) years from the date of the update.

3.6 If:

- (a) the Secretary of State approves an updated draft Station Social and Commercial Development Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 3.3, such document shall become the then current Station Social and Commercial Development Plan; or

- (b) the Secretary of State does not approve an updated draft Station Social and Commercial Development Plan submitted to it pursuant to paragraph 3.3, then the Franchisee shall:
- (i) make such amendments to it as the Secretary of State shall reasonably direct; and
  - (ii) provide such additional information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require,
- it being agreed that it will be unreasonable for the Secretary of State to make amendments that increase cost and risk to the Franchisee beyond parameters specified in the ICWC Record of Assumptions.

#### 4. Consultations

- 4.1 On or before the annual submission of the Station Asset Management Plan or the Station Social and Commercial Development Plan pursuant to the provisions of this Schedule 1.7, the Franchisee shall conduct consultations with relevant Stakeholders (including ACoRP, passengers, users of Stations, members of relevant local communities, Network Rail and the British Transport Police) in relation to the potential risks, opportunities and priorities for investment and operational efficiencies in relation to Stations. The Franchisee shall act reasonably in determining the scope of the specification of such consultations including the Stations to be considered.

#### 5. NOT USED.

#### 6. Security at Stations

- 6.1 The Franchisee shall maintain for the duration of the Franchise Period the Secure Stations Accreditation for the Stations already achieved by the Train Operator under the Previous Franchise Agreement as set out in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.7.
- 6.2 The Franchisee shall maintain for the duration of the Franchise Period the Secure Car Parks Accreditation for the Stations already achieved by the Train Operator under the Previous Franchise Agreement as set out in Appendix 1 to this Schedule 1.7.
- 6.3 In the event that the TRH Score for a Station increases by five per cent (5%) or more from the previous year's TRH Score for such Station, the Franchisee shall:
- (a) in respect of a Station that does not have Secure Station Accreditation, notify the Secretary of State of such increase and, as soon as reasonably practicable, obtain Secure Station Accreditation for such Station. The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State once such Secure Station Accreditation has been obtained and shall maintain the same through the Franchise Term; or
  - (b) in respect of a Station that already has Secure Station Accreditation (either pursuant to paragraph 6.1 above, or because the Franchisee has been required to obtain Secure Station Accreditation pursuant to paragraph 6.3(a) above), notify the Secretary of State of such increase and the provisions of paragraph 6.4 shall apply.
- 6.4 Upon the Secretary of State receiving notification pursuant to paragraph 6.3(b) above, the Secretary of State may, following consultation with the British Transport Police, revoke the Secure Station Accreditation for such Station. For the avoidance of doubt, revocation of Secure Station Accreditation pursuant to this paragraph 6.4 shall constitute a contravention of the Franchise Agreement by the Franchisee.
- 6.5 Where a Station loses its Secure Station Accreditation (whether pursuant to paragraph 6.4 or otherwise) the Franchisee shall:
- (a) obtain Secure Station Accreditation for such Station as soon as reasonably practicable, in any event no later than 12 months from and including the date of the loss of such Secure Station Accreditation, and notify the Secretary of State that such Secure Station Accreditation has been achieved; and
  - (b) maintain such Secure Station Accreditation once obtained for the duration of the Franchise Term.
- 6.6 In this paragraph 6:

- (a) **"BTP Methodology"** means the document in the agreed terms marked BTPM;
- (b) **"Secure Car Parks Accreditation"** means car parks at Stations which have achieved accreditation under the Secure Car Parks Scheme;
- (c) **"Secure Car Parks Scheme"** means the scheme run by the British Parking Association that sets design and management safety standards for crime reduction at car parks, also known as Park Mark;
- (d) **"Secure Stations Accreditation"** means Stations which have achieved accreditation under the Secure Stations Scheme;
- (e) **"Secure Stations Scheme"** means the certification scheme which is managed by the Department for Transport and British Transport Police and sets station design and management safety standards for crime reduction and supporting vulnerable people at railway stations; and
- (f) **"TRH Score"** means the threat, risk harm score for each Station calculated by the British Transport Police in accordance with the BTP Methodology.

## 7. Information about Station Improvement Measures

- 7.1 The Franchisee shall at all times during the Franchise Period maintain records in relation to the measures taken by it to improve the Station environment at each of the Stations, covering the areas and the information set out in Appendix 2 to this Schedule 1.7.
- 7.2 The Franchisee shall, subject to paragraph 7.3, provide to the Secretary of State the information set out in Appendix 2 to this Schedule 1.7 within one (1) Reporting Period of each anniversary of the Start Date during the Franchise Period.
- 7.3 When so requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall, within such reasonable period as the Secretary of State may specify, make such information available for review by the Secretary of State by reference to:
  - (a) such level of disaggregation as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) any particular Station as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State.
- 7.4 The information to be provided by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State within the timescales stipulated are set out in Appendix 2 to this Schedule 1.7.

## 8. NOT USED.

## 9. Station Investment

- 9.1 The Franchisee shall at all times during the Franchise Term, co-operate with the Secretary of State and any third party nominated by the Secretary of State and notified to the Franchisee in developing opportunities for financing investment at Stations and Franchisee Access Stations in order to improve the station environment at such stations.
- 9.2 In co-operating with the Secretary of State and/or any nominated third party in developing any such financing opportunities, the Franchisee shall:
  - (a) attend meetings with the Secretary of State and/or such third party to discuss such opportunities;
  - (b) provide the Franchisee's opinion on those opportunities;
  - (c) review and comment on implementation timetables and programmes for any such opportunities; and
  - (d) where requested by the Secretary of State to do so use all reasonable endeavours to engage with Network Rail for the purposes of ascertaining the feasibility and costs of making amendments to any Station Leases in order to facilitate the implementation of those opportunities.

**10. CCTV**

10.1 The Franchisee shall ensure that any installation of, or upgrade to, CCTV at any Station shall be undertaken in accordance with the CCTV Guidance.

**11. Station Toilet Access**

11.1 The Franchisee shall ensure that access to toilet facilities at all Stations is provided free of charge.

Withdrawn March 2024

APPENDIX 1 TO SCHEDULE 1.7A

List of Stations and Car Parks with Secure Stations Accreditation  
and Secure Car Parks Accreditation

1. **Secure Stations Accreditation**

- Birmingham International
- Carlisle
- Coventry
- Crewe
- Lancaster
- Macclesfield
- Oxenholme
- Penrith
- Preston
- Rugby
- Runcorn
- Stafford
- Stockport
- Stoke-on-Trent
- Warrington Bank Quay
- Wigan North Western

2. **Secure Car Parks Accreditation**

- Birmingham International
- Carlisle
- Coventry
- Crewe
- Lancaster
- Macclesfield
- Oxenholme
- Penrith
- Preston
- Rugby
- Runcorn
- Stafford
- Stoke-on-Trent
- Warrington Bank Quay
- Wigan North Western

Withdrawn March 2024

## APPENDIX 2 TO SCHEDULE 1.7A

## Information about Station Improvement Measures

Table A		
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
Information to be provided	Information (format)	When information to be provided
Station NRPS scores (including overall satisfaction with the station)	%	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Footfall	Count	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
SOR audit scores (if applied)	% compliance with audit	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Mystery shopper results	Count / % - some elements will be scored out of 10, for example, and others will be a % achievement. Specific measures are to be determined in franchise	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Cost of provision of services	£	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Total investment at station	£	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Right time departures	%	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Customer Complaints	Count – number of customer complaints about station facilities/staff	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Customer Compliments	Count – number of customer compliments about station facilities/staff	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Ticket office opening hours	Hrs (to be compared to published hours)	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Gateline operation	Hrs (to be compared to published hours)	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Lounge availability	Hrs (to be compared to published hours)	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Community investment	£ contribution (measured by London Benchmarking Group methodology)	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Vacant buildings brought into use	Count	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Units let to community groups	Count	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Community meetings attended	Count	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.

Table A		
Column 1	Column 2	Column 3
Information to be provided	Information (format)	When information to be provided
CRP Amount spent	£ as a % of total amount available	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Registered station adopters	Count	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Step-free access	% (of stations within group with step-free access)	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Step-free interchange	% (of stations in group with step-free interchange between platforms)	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Booked and un-booked assistance requests met	%	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Lift availability	Hours	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Changing Place availability	Hours	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Accessible toilet availability	Hours	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Station staff costs	£	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Utilities cost	£	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Cleaning costs	£	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Reactive maintenance costs	£	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Planned maintenance costs	£	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Station operations income	£	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Commercial income	£	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Crime and incidents reported to the BTP	Count	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Slips, trips and falls	Count	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Staff assaults	Count	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Secure Station Accreditation	Count	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Secure Car Park Accreditation	Count	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Facilities Management and Cleaning KPIs met	%	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Energy waste consumption	kWh	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Water consumption	Litres	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.

<b>Table A</b>		
<b>Column 1</b>	<b>Column 2</b>	<b>Column 3</b>
<b>Information to be provided</b>	<b>Information (format)</b>	<b>When information to be provided</b>
Waste recycled	%	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Station facility improvements	RAG	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Minor Works Fund delivery	RAG	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Single Sign Up	RAG	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Car park expansions	RAG	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
ISO55001 delivery	RAG	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Sustainable access improvements	RAG	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Station Travel Plans	RAG	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
Masterplan delivery	RAG	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.
HS2 station works	RAG	As per paragraph 7.2 but subject to paragraph 7.3.

Withdrawn March 2024

APPENDIX 3 TO SCHEDULE 1.7A

NOT USED

Withdrawn March 2024

APPENDIX 4 TO SCHEDULE 1.7A

NOT USED

Withdrawn March 2024

Appendix 2 to Schedule 1

Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments)

Withdrawn March 2024

**SCHEDULE 8A(EMA)**

**PAYMENTS**

**Schedule 8A(EMA)**

**Franchise Payments**

**1. Definitions**

For the purposes of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) only, the following words and expressions shall have the following meanings unless otherwise set out in clause 3 (Definitions):

<b>“Accrued Claims”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 5.7 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>“Accrued Disallowable Costs”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 5.7 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>“Accrued Revenue Foregone”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 5.7 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>“Actual Capex”</b>	means the actual EMA Capital Expenditure of the Franchisee in the relevant period;
<b>“Actual Costs”</b>	means the actual Costs of the Franchisee in the relevant period;
<b>“Actual Revenue”</b>	means the actual Revenue of the Franchisee in the relevant period;
<b>“Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities”</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 5.8 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>“Base Cash Position”</b>	means [REDACTED <sup>4</sup> ] or such other value as the Secretary of State may determine in accordance with paragraph 9.8 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>“Budget”</b>	means together: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) the periodic cost and revenues budget; and</li> <li>(b) the periodic capex budget,</li> </ul> as such budget may be updated from time to time in accordance with paragraph 4 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>“Budgeted Capex”</b>	means the EMA Capital Expenditure budgeted to be incurred by the Franchisee in a Reporting Period and specified in the then current Budget as agreed or determined pursuant to paragraph 4 of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>“Budgeted Costs”</b>	means the Costs budgeted to be incurred by the Franchisee in each Reporting Period and specified in the then current Budget as agreed

<sup>4</sup> 29 May 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

or determined pursuant to paragraph 4 of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);

**"Costs"**

means costs and expenses properly accrued:

- (a) in relation to Reporting Period 13, during Reporting Period 13 and relating to the Franchisee's performance of the ICWC Services during Reporting Period 13; or
- (b) in relation to the term of the EMA, during such term and relating to the Franchisee's performance of the ICWC Services during the term of the EMA;

and stated in the Franchisee's profit and loss account in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts but excluding:

- (c) Franchise Payments (which shall include (for the avoidance of doubt) the value of any Management Fee and EMA Performance Payment);
- (d) corporation tax and deferred tax charge in the Franchisee's profit and loss account;
- (e) any accounting transaction which does not require the Franchisee to make a cash payment including notional pensions accounting adjustments and the accounting impact of financial instrument revaluations other than depreciation where that depreciation is not a Disallowable Cost;
- (f) EMA Capital Expenditure;

provided that:

- (i) if the Franchisee's profit and loss account includes any cost(s) in respect of right of use assets treated in accordance with IFRS16 (the **"IFRS16 Cost"**), then for the purpose of this definition the amount for each IFRS16 Cost shall be deemed to be replaced (for the purposes of this definition and all related consequential purposes under this Agreement) with the amount which would have applied if the cost had been treated on a cash basis, as such cost is incurred in accordance with the relevant contractual arrangements, rather than in accordance with IFRS16; and
- (ii) for the avoidance of doubt, any liability of the Franchisee to the Secretary of State arising under or in connection with the Franchise Agreement prior to 1 March 2020 shall not be treated as or give rise to a cost or expense for the purpose of the Franchisee's profit and loss account;

**"Ceiling Cash Position"**

means **[REDACTED<sup>5</sup>]** or such other value as the Secretary of State may determine in accordance with paragraph 9.8 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);

<sup>5</sup> 29 May 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

**“Disallowable Costs”** means any Costs or EMA Capital Expenditure which are described within Appendix 1 (Disallowable Costs) to this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);

**“EMA Capital Expenditure”** means costs of creating non-current or fixed assets which are not Costs (as defined in this Schedule 8A(EMA)) and which are properly accrued:

- (a) in relation to Reporting Period 13, during Reporting Period 13 and relating to the Franchisee’s performance of the ICWC Services during Reporting Period 13; or
- (b) in relation to the term of the EMA, during such term and relating to the Franchisee’s performance of the ICWC Services during the term of the EMA;

**“EMA Good and Efficient Operator”** means in the context of all other relevant provisions of this Agreement, a notional train operator, having the same commercial, regulatory and operational arrangements as the Franchisee and being subject to the same operational circumstances (which, for the avoidance of doubt, shall recognise the extraordinary impact of COVID-19, the existence of the EMA and the requirement for operators to act in the national interest in response to COVID-19), which is a party to a franchise agreement in equivalent terms to the Franchise Agreement, with performance targets and standards equivalent to those set out in Schedule 8.8A (EMA Performance Payment) of the Franchise Agreement, which complies with its obligations under such franchise agreement and the Licences in a timely, efficient and economical manner and with the degree of skill, diligence, prudence and foresight which can be expected from a skilled and experienced train operator so that in this context costs and revenues are optimised in combination to the greatest extent reasonably practicable, adopting a reasonable balance in respect of short, medium and longer term consequences for the relevant franchise;

**“EMA Performance Period”** means the period:

- (a) the period commencing on the EMA Start Date and ending at 1:59 a.m. on 20 September 2020, or such earlier date of termination of the EMA; and
- (b) each Extended EMA Performance Period;

**“EMA Start Date”** means 1 April 2020;

**“Emergency Working Capital Payment”** has the meaning given in paragraph 9.5 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);

**“Estimated EMA Capital Expenditure”** means the EMA Capital Expenditure estimated by the Secretary of State using available resources as is practicable at the time of the estimation;

**“Estimated Costs”** means the Costs reasonably estimated by the Secretary of State using available resources as is practicable at the time of the estimation;

**“Estimated Residual Components”** means the Residual Components estimated by the Secretary of State using available resources as is practicable at the time of the estimation;

<b>"Estimated Revenue"</b>	means the Revenue reasonably determined by the Secretary of State using available resources as is practicable at the time of the determination;
<b>"Extended EMA Performance Period"</b>	means, in the event that the term of the EMA is extended in accordance with clause 3.3 of the EMA, each further period following the end of the preceding EMA Performance Period, comprising six (6) additional Reporting Periods (or less in the event that the EMA is terminated prior to the expiry of the relevant Extended EMA Performance Period);
<b>"Final Reviewed Accounts"</b>	means the audited accounts provided pursuant to paragraph 16 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>"Floor Cash Position"</b>	Means [REDACTED <sup>6</sup> ] or such other value as the Secretary of State may determine in accordance with paragraph 9.8 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>"Forecast Closing Cash Position"</b>	means, with respect to a Reporting Period, the Franchisee's forecast working capital position (excluding the aggregate of the Periodic Franchise Payment and Periodic Budgeted Capex Payment made in the following Reporting Period) as at the last day of that Reporting Period and taking into account the Franchisee's latest ICWC Section of the Management Accounts;
<b>"Franchise Payment Component"</b>	means: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) each of the components of "FP" as described in paragraph 2.1 of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments); and</li> <li>(b) any component or element, described in the relevant provisions of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) and Schedule 8.8A (EMA Performance Payment), as the case may be, which is used in determining or calculating the value of those components described in paragraph (a) above;</li> </ul>
<b>"Initial Budget"</b>	means the Budget as at the EMA Start Date;
<b>"Management Fee and EMA Performance Payment" or "MFPP"</b>	means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 11 of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>"Periodic Adjustment"</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 6.2 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>"Periodic Budgeted Capex Payment" or "PBCP"</b>	means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 2.1 of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>"Periodic Franchise Payment" or "PFP"</b>	means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 2.1 of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>"Periodic Finance Review Meeting"</b>	has the meaning given in paragraph 5.1 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);
<b>"Reporting Period 13"</b>	means 1 March 2020 to 31 March 2020 (inclusive);

<sup>6</sup> 29 May 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

**“Reporting Period Budget Forecast Review Meeting”**

has the meaning given in paragraph 4.1 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);

**“Residual Components”**

means the net value of the components of the Franchise Payments under Schedule 8.1A which:

- (a) relate to any periods prior to Reporting Period 13; and
- (b) become payable during the relevant period,

For the purposes of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments), such net value shall be:

- (i) if payable by the Secretary of the State to the Franchisee, a positive number; or
- (ii) if payable by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State, a negative number;

**“Revenue”**

means the gross total revenue of the Franchisee received or receivable and properly accrued:

- (a) in relation to Reporting Period 13, during Reporting Period 13 and relating to the Franchisee’s performance of the ICWC Services during Reporting Period 13; or
- (b) in relation to the term of the EMA, during such term and relating to the Franchisee’s performance of the ICWC Services during the term of the EMA;

as stated in the Franchisee’s profit and loss account in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts but excluding:

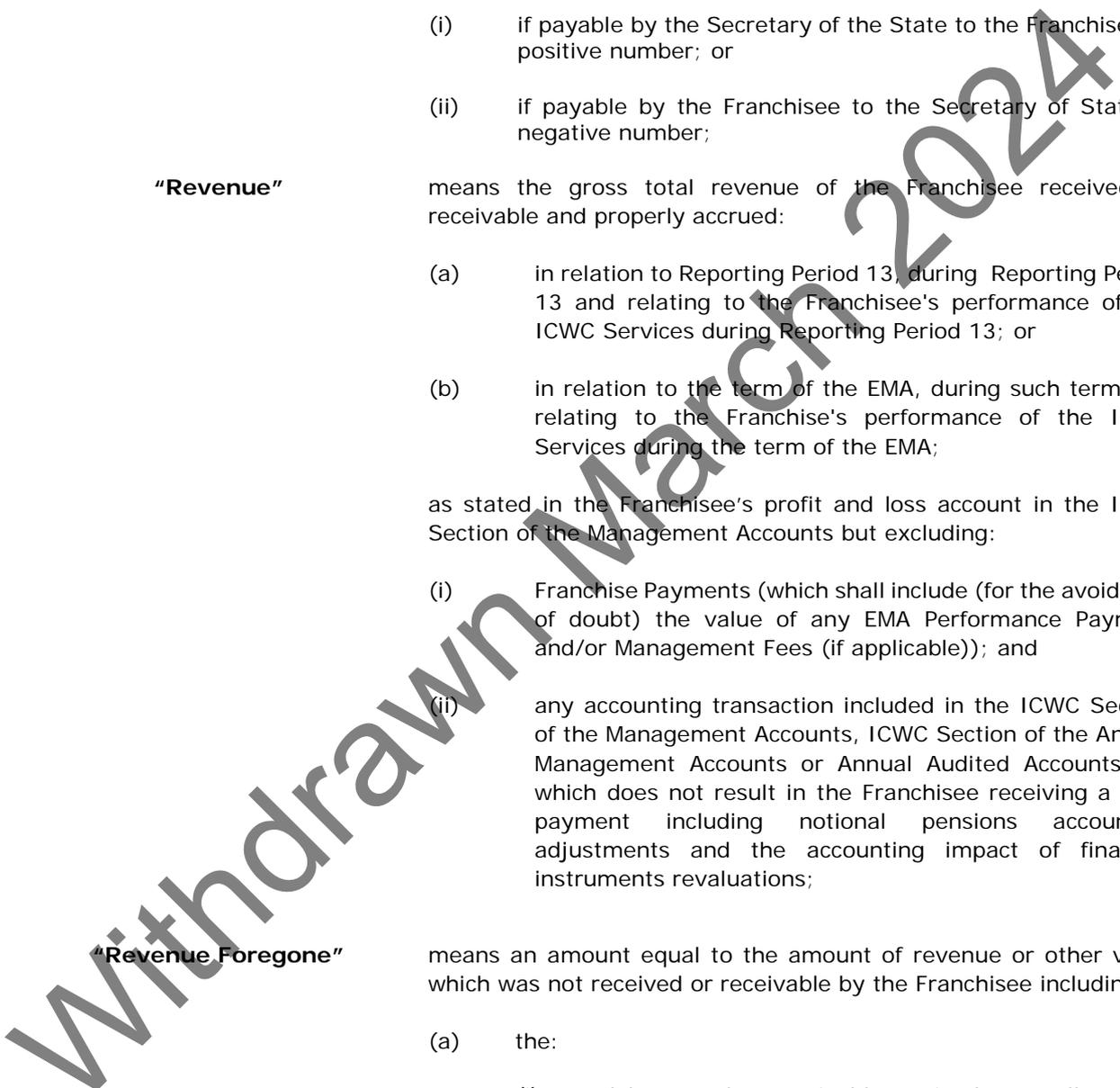
- (i) Franchise Payments (which shall include (for the avoidance of doubt) the value of any EMA Performance Payment and/or Management Fees (if applicable)); and
- (ii) any accounting transaction included in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts, ICWC Section of the Annual Management Accounts or Annual Audited Accounts but which does not result in the Franchisee receiving a cash payment including notional pensions accounting adjustments and the accounting impact of financial instruments revaluations;

**“Revenue Foregone”**

means an amount equal to the amount of revenue or other value which was not received or receivable by the Franchisee including:

- (a) the:
  - (i) debts or other receivables waived, not collected or written off; and/or
  - (ii) value of any other asset not realised in whole or in part,

but which would have been receivable and received or otherwise realised by the Franchisee if it had acted as an EMA Good and Efficient Operator; and



- (b) subject always to paragraph 3.8 (No Double Recovery) of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments), the amount by which the Purchase Price (as defined in Clause 2.1 of the Supplemental Agreement) receivable by the Franchisee is lower than it would have been but for the Franchisee:
  - (i) incurring Disallowable Costs; and/or
  - (ii) otherwise acting other than as EMA Good and Efficient Operator;

save where, in respect of both (a) and (b) above, such revenue is not received or receivable as a result of the Franchisee acting in accordance with the instructions of the Secretary of State;

**“Reviewed 2019/20 Accounts”**

has the meaning given to it in paragraph (g) of Appendix 2 to this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);

**“SoS Claim”**

means all losses, liabilities, costs, damages and expenses that the Secretary of State does or will incur or suffer (including any such losses, liabilities, costs, damages and expenses that are unliquidated or which are contingent):

- (a) as a consequence of any breach, negligence or other default of the Franchisee under or in connection with the Franchise Agreement and/or any agreement ancillary to this Agreement, including the Supplemental Agreement, and/or
- (b) in respect of any matter for which the Franchisee is to indemnify the Secretary of State pursuant to this Agreement or any agreement ancillary to this Agreement, including the Supplemental Agreement

**“Supporting Materials”**

means any materials explaining or supporting the Budget which have been produced by the Franchisee and serve as a Supporting Materials;

**“Working Capital Payment”**

means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 9.3 of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments); and

**“Working Capital Repayment”**

means the Franchise Payment Component calculated in accordance with paragraph 10.2 of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments).

Withdrawn March 2024

2. Franchise Payments

2.1A The Parties acknowledge and agree that the provisions of Schedule 8.1A of the Franchise Agreement shall be suspended during the term of the EMA. Any Residual Components relating to Reporting Periods prior to the term of the EMA shall be dealt with in accordance with paragraph 2.1 and Appendix 2 of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments).

2.1 The Franchise Payment for any Reporting Period during the term of the EMA shall be an amount equal to:

<b>£FP =</b>	<b>PFP + PBCP + PADJ + WCP – WCR + FADJ + MFPP – FWCA + RCP + ShOpP</b>
--------------	---

where:

<b>PFP</b>  (Periodic Franchise Payment)	means an amount equal to:	
	$PFP_n = BC_n - ER_{n-1}$	
	Where:	
	$BC_n$	means the Budgeted Costs for the current Reporting Period (if any). $BC_n$ may only be a positive number.
	$ER_{n-1}$	means the Estimated Revenue for Reporting Period <sub>(n-1)</sub> (if any) provided such Reporting Period occurs after the EMA Start Date. $ER_{n-1}$ may only be a positive number.
PFP may be a positive or negative number.		
<b>PBCP</b>  (Periodic Budgeted Capex Payment)	means an amount equal to the Budgeted Capex for the current Reporting Period (if any). PBCP may only be a positive number.	
<b>PADJ</b>	means any Periodic Adjustment, determined in accordance with paragraph 6 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments), to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. PADJ may be a positive or negative number.	
<b>WCP</b>	means any Working Capital Payment to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. WCP may only be a positive number.	
<b>WCR</b>	means any Working Capital Repayment to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. WCR may only be a positive number.	
<b>FADJ</b>	means any Final Adjustment, determined in accordance with paragraph 7 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments), to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. FADJ may be a positive or negative number.	
<b>MFPP</b>	means the Management Fee and EMA Performance Payment for the term of the EMA (and, in the case of the Management Fee, for Reporting Period 13), determined in accordance with paragraph 11.1 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) and to be paid on the first Payment Date following the determination of the Management Fee and EMA Performance Payment in accordance with Paragraph 11 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) which the Parties acknowledge will be after the expiry of the term of the EMA. Subject to paragraph 11.2, MFPP may only be a positive number.	

<b>FWCA</b>	means the Final Working Capital Adjustment, determined in accordance with paragraph 10.3 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments), to be made on that Reporting Period's Payment Date. FWCA may be a positive or negative number.
<b>RCP</b>	means an amount equal to the Residual Components for the preceding Reporting Period, other than any amounts which are payable under Appendix 2 to this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) relating to Residual Components for Reporting Period 13. RCP may be a positive or negative number.

2.1 Not Used.

2.2 Not Used.

2.3 The Parties agree that:

- (a) where **FFP is a positive number**, the Secretary of State shall pay that amount to the Franchisee on the Payment Date for that Reporting Period;
- (b) where **FFP is a negative number**, the Franchisee shall pay the corresponding positive amount to the Secretary of State on the Payment Date for that Reporting Period.

**3. Payment of Franchise Payments**

3.1 The Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee, no less than seven (7) days prior to the start of each Reporting Period (or, in the case of the first Reporting Period following the EMA Start Date, as soon as reasonably practicable), of the amount of the Franchise Payment payable in respect of that Reporting Period.

3.2 Each such notification shall set out in reasonable detail how the Franchise Payment has been calculated.

3.3 The Payment Date for a Reporting Period shall be the first Weekday of that Reporting Period.

3.4 Each Franchise Payment shall be payable by the Franchisee or, as the case may be, the Secretary of State in the amount notified by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 3.1 on the Payment Date of the Reporting Period to which it relates.

3.5 Each Franchise Payment shall be made:

- (a) by automatic electronic funds transfer in pounds sterling to such bank account in the United Kingdom as the payee of such payment may have previously specified to the payer in writing; and
- (b) so that cleared funds are received in that account on or before the due date for payment.

**Interest**

3.6 If:

- (a) the Franchisee fails to pay any amount to the Secretary of State on its due date; or
- (b) the Secretary of State fails to pay to the Franchisee the Franchise Payment on its due date,

that Party which has failed to pay shall in addition pay interest on such amount at the Interest Rate, calculated on a daily basis, from the due date for payment to the date on which payment is made.

**Disputes under Schedule 8**

3.7 If either the Franchisee or the Secretary of State disputes the amount of a Franchise Payment, the dispute shall, unless the Franchisee and the Secretary of State otherwise agree, be resolved in accordance with

the provisions of clause 17 (Governing Law and Jurisdiction) of the Franchise Agreement. Any such dispute shall not affect the obligation of either party to pay a Franchise Payment notified in accordance with this Schedule 8A(EMA).

**No Double Recovery**

- 3.8 Neither Party shall be entitled to recover (by way of an adjustment to Franchise Payments or otherwise) more than once in respect of the same amount. In particular, no amount shall be categorised as both EMA Capital Expenditure and as a Cost for the purpose of this Schedule 8A(EMA) or inconsistently with the accounting treatment assumed for the same capital expenditure in calculating the Franchise Payments under the Franchise Agreement prior to and after the implementation of the EMA.
- 3.8A In the event that the Franchisee is successful in obtaining any UK Government support that is offered in relation to the impact of COVID-19, this shall be taken into account in relation to the relevant payment and adjustments in this Schedule 8A(EMA) such that the Franchisee does not benefit from double recovery or double counting.

**Force Majeure and Payments**

- 3.9 Following the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event, the payment of Franchise Payments shall continue to be calculated in accordance with this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) and the payment of such Franchise Payments shall continue unaffected.

**Revisions to the Budget**

- 4.1 Without limiting the requirement for any other meeting, the Parties shall, subject to paragraph 5.10, hold a forecast Budget review meeting in each Reporting Period (a "**Reporting Period Budget Forecast Review Meeting**") at a time and location notified to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State following provision of the information referred to in paragraph 4.2. The purpose of the meeting shall be to review and seek to agree:
  - (a) revisions (if any) to the then current Budget for the remaining Reporting Periods of the Budget;
  - (b) the content of any necessary or desirable corresponding addendum to the Supporting Materials; and
  - (c) any new contracts which the Franchisee proposes to enter into with an Affiliate.

The Franchisee shall ensure that the representatives of the Franchisee at the Reporting Period Budget Forecast Review Meeting shall include the Finance Director of the Franchisee or a suitable representative of the Finance Director as may reasonably be approved for this purpose by the Secretary of State.

- 4.2 The Franchisee shall, prior to the date of each Reporting Period Budget Forecast Review Meeting have provided to the Secretary of State the relevant information required pursuant to paragraph 9.2 of Schedule 11.2A in relation to the previous Reporting Period together with a draft periodic budget prepared using the cost and revenue categories within P&L2 of the ICWC Financial Model, updated to reflect Actual Costs and Actual Revenues as reflected in the latest ICWC Section of the Management Accounts and revised Budgeted Costs for the remainder of the term of the EMA, in accordance with the timescales set out therein, and shall provide the Secretary of State with all further information as the Secretary of State may request from time to time for the purposes of the operation of this paragraph 4, within such time as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for that purpose (and this paragraph shall continue to apply such that the number of requests which the Secretary of State may make is not limited).
- 4.3 If the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraphs 4.1(a) to 4.1(c) the relevant Reporting Period Budget Forecast Review Meeting, the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine such matters.
- 4.4 Such revisions to the Budget and addenda to the Supporting Materials as agreed or determined shall take effect from the first day of the Reporting Period immediately following the date on which the Reporting Period Budget Forecast Review Meeting (at which such matters were discussed) took place provided that, if such revisions or addenda are not agreed by the first day of that Reporting Period, the relevant revisions and addenda shall take effect from the first day of the Reporting Period which falls at least 10 Weekdays after those revisions and addenda are agreed or determined.

- 4.5 Each revision to the Budget and/or addendum to the Supporting Materials shall (unless the Parties otherwise agree):
- (a) adopt the same format and structure as the original version in agreed terms (or where the preceding version has included any changes from that format and structure expressly agreed by the Parties for this purpose) from the preceding version;
  - (b) make no assumptions or include any costs, revenue or other adjustments which are not consistent with the definitions of Costs, EMA Capital Expenditure and Revenue or which represent Disallowable Costs or Revenue Foregone or liabilities in respect of SoS Claims (except as may be otherwise expressly agreed by the Parties for that purpose);
  - (c) adopt the same accounting principles and standards as the original version (as these may be expressly varied by agreement between the Parties for this purpose or, in the case of accounting standards, as these may be reasonably revised by the Secretary of State to take account of changes to GAAP in the United Kingdom); and
  - (d) otherwise facilitate easy comparison with the definitions of Costs, EMA Capital Expenditure, Revenue, Disallowable Costs and Revenue Foregone and with the information reported in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts, ICWC Section of the Annual Management Accounts and the Audited Annual Accounts.
- 4.6 Each time it is agreed or determined that the Budget is to be revised and/or an addendum is to be added to the Supporting Materials, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to:-
- (a) make the agreed or determined revisions to the Budget and/or Supporting Materials himself (or procure this is done on his behalf) and provide copies of those revised documents to the Franchisee; or
  - (b) require the Franchisee to provide the agreed or determined revisions to the Budget and/or Supporting Materials for approval by the Secretary of State, which the Franchisee shall do and provide revised versions to the Secretary of State within such time as the Secretary of State shall specify for this purpose.
- 4.7 The Franchisee shall not enter into any contract with an Affiliate unless the Secretary of State has, in his absolute discretion (and for this purpose clause 6.4 of the Franchise Agreement shall not apply) first consented to the terms of such contract and to it being entered into on those terms, whether at or following a Reporting Period Budget Forecast Review Meeting (where such contract forms part of the agenda for that meeting) or otherwise.
- 4.8 For the purpose of this paragraph 4, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to consider any information provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee and any other sources of information which the Secretary of State considers to be relevant and the Secretary of State shall be entitled to request such information from the Franchisee as the Secretary of State requires in connection with the matters referred to in this paragraph 4. Without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, in considering any revisions to the Budget, regard shall be had to the definitions of Costs, Revenue, EMA Capital Expenditure, EMA Good and Efficient Operator, Disallowable Costs and Revenue Foregone, so as to ensure that the revisions to the Budget are consistent with those definitions.
- 4.9 Subject to the Secretary of State's rights set out in paragraph 4.7, the Parties shall at all times act in good faith, reasonably and in a timely manner in the interpretation and application of the provisions for agreeing revisions to the Budget and any addendum to the Supporting Materials.

**5. Review of Franchisee's performance against Budget**

**Finance Review Meeting**

- 5.1 Without limiting the requirement for any other meeting, the Parties shall, subject to paragraph 5.10, hold a finance review meeting in every Reporting Period ("**Periodic Finance Review Meeting**") at such time(s) and location(s) notified to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State following provision of the information referred to in paragraph 5.2 and:
- (a) the purpose of the Periodic Finance Review Meeting shall be to review the financial performance of the Franchisee. This shall include:

- (i) a review and discussion of variances arising in the preceding Reporting Period between Actual Costs, Actual Capex and Actual Revenue, and Budgeted Costs, Budgeted Capex and Estimated Revenue respectively and confirmation of the value of the Periodic Adjustment to be applied to the Franchise Payment to be paid in the Reporting Period following the Reporting Period in which the Periodic Finance Review Meeting is taking place;
  - (ii) a review and discussion regarding any Actual Costs with respect to payments made by the Franchisee under contracts with Affiliates which exceed either the Budgeted Costs stated in the then current Budget or the level of payments made under the contracts with Affiliates for equivalent periods prior to the EMA Start Date;
  - (iii) a review of fees and payments (including bonuses) actually paid by the Franchisee to its directors and officers during the preceding Reporting Period as against the Budgeted Costs for such fees and payments as stated in the then current Budget;
  - (iv) a review and discussion of the Franchisee's management of its working capital and the Franchisee's Forecast Closing Cash Position for that Reporting Period in which the Periodic Finance Review Meeting is taking place and any Working Capital Payment or Working Capital Repayment to be applied to the Franchise Payment to be paid in the Reporting Period following the Reporting Period in which the Periodic Finance Review Meeting is taking place;
  - (v) actions to be taken in respect of the Franchisee's financial performance;
  - (vi) identification of any potential Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and SoS Claims that may have been incurred within the preceding or current Reporting Period; and
  - (vii) confirmation and valuation of any Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and SoS Claims (and/or in accordance with paragraph 5.9, relevant Initial SoS Claim Amounts, as applicable) which have been identified pursuant to (vi) above in previous Report Period Finance Review Meetings.
- (b) the Franchisee shall ensure that the representatives of the Franchisee at the meeting shall include the Finance Director of the Franchisee or a suitable representative of the Finance Director as may reasonably be approved for this purpose by the Secretary of State; and
- (c) the Secretary of State shall ensure that the representatives of the Secretary of State shall include a senior civil servant where the confirmation and valuation of any Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and/or SoS Claims (and/or in accordance with paragraph 5.9, relevant Initial SoS Claim Amounts, as applicable) are to be considered as part of any Reporting Period Finance Review Meeting,

and, for the avoidance of doubt, the purpose of the Periodic Finance Review Meeting held in the first Reporting Period of the term of the EMA shall be to discuss the financial performance of the Franchisee during Reporting Period 13.

5.2 The Franchisee shall, prior to the date of each Periodic Financial Review Meeting have provided to the Secretary of State the relevant information required pursuant to paragraph 9.2 of Schedule 11.2A in relation to the previous Reporting Period together with a statement of the Franchisee's Forecast Closing Cash Position applicable to that Reporting Period, in accordance with the timescales set out therein, and shall provide the Secretary of State with all further information as the Secretary of State may request from time to time for the purposes of the operation of paragraph 5.1, within such time as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for that purpose (and this paragraph shall continue to apply such that the number of requests which the Secretary of State may make is not limited).

5.3 Not used

5.4 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to consider any information provided to him by the Franchisee and any other sources of information which the Secretary of State considers to be relevant and the Secretary of State shall be entitled to request such information from the Franchisee as the Secretary of State requires for the purposes of the operation of this paragraph 5. The Franchisee shall provide the information within such time as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for the purpose (and this paragraph shall continue to apply such that the number of requests which the Secretary of State may make is not limited).

5.4A If, within 10 Weekdays following the relevant Reporting Period Finance Review Meeting:

- (a) the Parties have failed to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 5.1(a)(vii); and
- (b) such matters either individually or in the aggregate exceed [REDACTED<sup>7</sup>] then

each Party will respectively procure that such matter or matters (as the case may be) will be escalated to any senior civil servant within the Department for Transport's Rail Group (excluding the Passenger Services Group) on behalf of the Secretary of State and any statutory director of any Affiliate of the Franchisee on behalf of the Franchisee. Those representatives will meet at the earliest convenient time and in any event within 20 Weekdays of the date of the relevant Reporting Period Finance Review Meeting and negotiate in good faith and attempt to agree the relevant matters.

5.5 If:

- (a) the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 5.1(a) at the relevant Reporting Period Finance Review Meeting, in circumstances where paragraph 5.4A does not apply;
- (b) the representatives of the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 5.1(a)(vii) within 10 Weekdays of first meeting to agree such matters in accordance with paragraph 5.4A, in circumstances where that paragraph applies; or
- (c) the Franchisee fails to provide the relevant information required pursuant to Schedule 11.2A (Management Information), in accordance with the timescales set out therein, or otherwise in accordance with this paragraph 5,

the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to his other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the relevant matters in accordance with this paragraph 5 and all other applicable provisions of this Schedule 8A(EMA) but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.

#### **Accrued Disallowable Costs, Accrued Revenue Foregone and Accrued SoS Claims**

5.6 Without prejudice to paragraphs 5.4 to 5.5, if subsequent to any Reporting Period Finance Review Meeting the Secretary of State later identifies any item (applicable to that period to which the relevant Reporting Period Finance Review Meeting relates) which the Secretary of State considers is or may be a Disallowable Cost or an instance of Revenue Foregone or any SoS Claims (whether following a review of the Franchisee's Annual Audited Accounts or Final Reviewed Accounts or otherwise) the Secretary of State shall within 28 days of identifying such item be entitled to:

- (a) notify the Franchisee in writing, identifying the item concerned; and
- (b) request further information from the Franchisee in connection with the item for the purposes of the operation of this paragraph 5.4 and paragraphs 5.6A to 5.6C. The Franchisee shall provide the information within such time as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify for the purpose.

5.6A The parties shall seek to agree the value of any Disallowable Costs and/or Revenue Foregone and/or any SoS Claims (and/or in accordance with paragraph 5.9, relevant Initial SoS Claim Amounts, as applicable) identified by the Secretary of State pursuant to paragraph 5.6 within 20 Weekdays of the later of the Secretary of State's notice referred to in paragraph 5.6(a) and the date specified by the Secretary of State for the delivery of further information in accordance with paragraph 5.6(b) (the "**Escalation Trigger Date**").

5.6B If:

- (a) the parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 5.6A; and

<sup>7</sup> 29 May 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

- (b) such matters either individually or in the aggregate exceed [REDACTED<sup>8</sup>] then

each Party will respectively procure that such matter or matters (as the case may be) will be escalated to any senior civil servant within the Department for Transport's Rail Group (excluding the Passenger Services Group) on behalf of the Secretary of State and any statutory director of any Affiliate of the Franchisee on behalf of the Franchisee. Those representatives will meet at the earliest convenient time and in any event within 20 Weekdays of the Escalation Trigger Date and negotiate in good faith and attempt to agree the relevant matters.

5.6C If:

- (a) the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 5.6A in circumstances where paragraph 5.6B does not apply;
- (b) the representatives of the Parties fail to agree the matters referred to in paragraph 5.6A within 10 Weekdays of first meeting to agree such matters in accordance with paragraph 5.6B, in circumstances where that paragraph applies; or
- (c) the Franchisee fails to provide the relevant information required pursuant to paragraph 5.6(b) in accordance with the specified timescales, then

the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the value of any Disallowable Costs and/or Revenue Foregone and/or any SoS Claims (and/or in accordance with paragraph 5.9, relevant Initial SoS Claim Amounts, as applicable).

5.7 The value of any Disallowable Costs and/or Revenue Foregone and/or any SoS Claims (and/or in accordance with paragraph 5.9, relevant Initial SoS Claim Amounts as applicable) as agreed or determined whether pursuant to paragraph 5.4A, paragraph 5.5, paragraph 5.6A, paragraph 5.6B, paragraph 5.6C or paragraph 5.9 shall be referred to as "**Accrued Disallowable Costs**" and "**Accrued Revenue Foregone**" and "**Accrued Claims**" (as applicable).

5.8 Subject to paragraph 5.8A, the value of any Accrued Disallowable Costs and/or Accrued Revenue Foregone and/or Accrued Claims on each occasion accumulated pursuant to paragraph 5.7 shall be aggregated with the total of all Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and SoS Claims which have been previously accumulated, such aggregated value from time to time being the "**Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities**".

5.8A The value of the Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities shall be limited to:

- (a) in the event that there has been no extension to the term of EMA, the sum of (i) the maximum potential Management Fee payable for the term of the EMA (which, for the avoidance of doubt, shall take account of any early expiry or termination of the EMA) calculated pursuant to paragraph 11.1; and (ii) the sum of all of the EMA Performance Payments for the term of the EMA calculated in accordance with Schedule 8.8A (EMA Performance Payment); or
- (b) in the event that there has been an extension to the term of the EMA, the sum of (i) the maximum potential Management Fee payable for the term of the EMA (which, for the avoidance of doubt, shall take account of any early expiry or termination of the EMA) calculated pursuant to paragraph 11.1; and (ii) the sum of all of the EMA Performance Payments for the term of the EMA calculated in accordance with Schedule 8.8A (EMA Performance Payment).

5.9 To the extent that any SoS Claim is a contingent or unliquidated claim (a "**Contingent SoS Claim**"), the parties shall, pursuant to paragraph 5.4A, paragraph 5.6A or paragraph 5.6B (as applicable) seek to agree (or in the absence of agreement, the Secretary of State may for the purposes of paragraph 5.5 and shall for the purposes of paragraph 5.6C, reasonably determine) an initial value for such Contingent SoS Claim (the "**Initial SoS Claim Amount**") and the Initial SoS Claim Amount shall be deemed to be an Accrued Claim

<sup>8</sup> 29 May 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

for the purposes of paragraph 5.7. If the value of Contingent SoS Claim once fully liquidated (that is, being agreed or determined through dispute resolution) is:

- (a) in excess of the Initial SoS Claim Amount the Secretary of State shall be entitled to claim such amount in excess of the Initial SoS Claim Amount from the Franchisee:
  - (i) as an adjustment to the Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities to be applied against the calculation of MFPP, where Franchise Payments in favour of the Secretary of State remain to be paid after the date on which the Contingent SoS Claim has become fully liquidated; and/or
  - (ii) as an adjustment to the Franchise Payment payable after the expiry of the term of the EMA;
  - (iii) as a debt from the Franchisee which the Secretary of State shall be entitled to claim in accordance with the Funding Deed or from the Performance Bond on expiry or termination of this Franchise Agreement; or
- (b) is less than the Initial SoS Claim Amount the Secretary of State shall repay to the Franchisee the difference between the actual liquidated value of the relevant SoS Claim and the Initial SoS Claim Amount either:
  - (i) as an adjustment to the Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities to be applied against the calculation of MFPP, where Franchise Payments remain to be paid after the date on which the Contingent SoS Claim has become fully liquidated; or
  - (ii) where no Franchise Payment is payable after the date on which the Contingent SoS Claim becomes fully liquidated as a payment to the Franchisee.

5.10 The Secretary of State shall have the discretion (acting reasonably) to decrease (and subsequently increase) the required frequency of the Reporting Period Budget Forecast Review Meetings and/or the Periodic Finance Review Meetings, provided they shall be no more frequent than once a Reporting Period.

5.11 Any Reporting Period Budget Forecast Review Meeting or Period Finance Review Meeting (or part thereof) may be held remotely with the prior agreement of the Parties.

**6. Periodic Adjustments**

6.1 The value of PADJ for the current Reporting Period (n) shall be equal to the following

<b>PADJ for Reporting Period(n) =</b>	$(ACRP_{n-2} - BCRP_{n-2}) + (ACAP_{n-2} - BCAP_{n-2}) - (ARRP_{n-2} - ERRP_{n-2})$
---------------------------------------	---

**Where:**

<b>ACRP<sub>n-2</sub></b>	means the total Actual Costs in the second preceding Reporting Period (n-2) as set out in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts for that preceding Reporting Period, provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the EMA Start Date shall be disregarded. ACRP <sub>n-2</sub> may only be a positive number.
<b>BCRP<sub>n-2</sub></b>	means the total Budgeted Costs in respect of the second preceding Reporting Period (n-2) based on the version of the Budget which applied for the purpose of the calculation of the Franchise Payment for that preceding Reporting Period (n-2), provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the EMA Start Date shall be disregarded. BCRP <sub>n-2</sub> may only be a positive number.
<b>ACAP<sub>n-2</sub></b>	means the total Actual Capex for the second preceding Reporting Period (n-2), provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the EMA

	Start Date shall be disregarded. ACAP <sub>n-2</sub> may only be a positive number
<b>BCAP<sub>n-2</sub></b>	means the Budgeted Capex in respect of the second preceding Reporting Period (based on the version of the Budget which applied for the purpose of the calculation of the Franchise Payment for that preceding Reporting Period (n-2)), provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the EMA Start Date shall be disregarded. BCAP <sub>n-2</sub> may only be a positive number
<b>ARRP<sub>n-2</sub></b>	means the total Actual Revenue for the second preceding Reporting Period (n-2), provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the EMA Start Date shall be disregarded. ARRP may only be a positive number.
<b>ERRP<sub>n-2</sub></b>	means the total Estimated Revenue in respect of the second preceding Reporting Period (n-2), provided that any Reporting Periods prior to the EMA Start Date shall be disregarded. ERRP may only be a positive number.

6.2 The value of PADJ in respect of a Reporting Period shall be made as an adjustment to the next Franchise Payment payable after that calculation of PADJ is determined ("**Periodic Adjustment**"). For the avoidance of doubt a Periodic Adjustment shall be calculated on the basis that no interest is due pursuant to paragraph 3.6 of this Schedule 8A(EMA).

6.3 The Secretary of State agrees that, provided the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts (in a form consistent with the obligations of the Franchisee under Schedule 11.2A (Management Information)) are received from the Franchisee within the timescale specified in paragraph 9.2(a) of Schedule 11.2A (Management Information), the Secretary of State will provide the Franchisee with the value of PADJ in sufficient time for the Periodic Adjustment to be included in the Franchise Payment for the Reporting Period immediately following the Reporting Period to which the Periodic Adjustment relates.

6.4 If the Franchisee fails to provide the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts in accordance with its obligations under Schedule 11.2A (Management Information), the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to his other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of any Periodic Adjustment in accordance with this paragraph 6 but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.

7. **Final Adjustments**

7.1 FADJ shall be equal to the following:

<b>FADJ for the EMA =</b>	$(TotalAC - TotalAR) + TotalACAP - (TotalIPFP + TotalPBCEP) - TotalIPADJ$
---------------------------	---

Where:

<b>TotalAC</b>	means the total Actual Costs of the Franchisee for the term of the EMA as set out in the Final Reviewed Accounts for the term of the EMA. TotalAC may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalAR</b>	means the total Actual Revenue for the term of the EMA as set out in the Final Reviewed Accounts for the term of the EMA. TotalAR may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalACAP</b>	means the total Actual Capex for the term of the EMA as set out in the Final Reviewed Accounts for the term of the EMA. TotalACAP may only be a positive number.

<b>TotalPFP</b>	means the aggregate value of all of the Periodic Franchise Payments paid to the Franchisee during the term of the EMA. TotalPFP may be positive or negative.
<b>TotalPBCP</b>	means the aggregate value of all of the Periodic Budgeted Capex Payments paid to the Franchisee during the term of the EMA. TotalPBCP may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalPADJ</b>	means the total net value of PADJ paid in respect of each Reporting Period during the term of the EMA. TotalPADJ may be positive or negative.

7.2 The value of FADJ in respect of the term of the EMA (whether negative or positive) shall be made as an adjustment to the next Franchise Payment payable after the calculation of FADJ is determined (the “**Final Adjustment**”) and the Parties acknowledge this will be payable as part of the Franchise Payments following the completion of the term of the EMA. For the avoidance of doubt the Final Adjustment shall be calculated on the basis that no interest is due pursuant to paragraph 3.6 of this Schedule 8A(EMA).

7.3 If the Franchisee fails to provide the information required by paragraphs 9.4(b) and 9.4(c) of Schedule 11.2A (Management Information) including Annual Audited Accounts, Final Reviewed Accounts and a reconciliation to the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts by the date specified in that paragraph the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to his other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of any Final Adjustment in accordance with this paragraph 7 but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination, including any information contained in the latest cumulative, year to date ICWC Section of the Management Accounts or in the ICWC Section of the Annual Management Accounts.

8. **NOT USED**

9. **Working Capital Payments**

9.1 A Working Capital Payment shall become payable to the Franchisee as part of a Reporting Period’s Franchise Payment where the Forecast Closing Cash Position for the preceding Reporting Period is less than the Floor Cash Position. The value of the Working Capital Payment shall be calculated in accordance with paragraph 9.3.

9.2 The Franchisee shall provide the Secretary of State with a statement of the Franchisee’s Forecast Closing Cash Position prior to each Periodic Finance Review Meeting in accordance with paragraph 5.2.

9.3 The Working Capital Payment, if payable in any Reporting Period, shall be equal to the following:

<b>WCP</b> =	<b>BCP – FCCP</b>
--------------	-------------------

Where:

<b>BCP</b>	the Base Cash Position.
<b>FCCP</b>	the Forecast Closing Cash Position applicable to the preceding Reporting Period.

9.4 If during a Reporting Period, the Franchisee becomes aware that in its reasonable opinion prior to the payment of the Franchise Payment in respect of the following Reporting Period the Franchisee’s available Cash Balance will be insufficient to meets its liabilities that will fall due prior to the payment of the Franchise Payment applicable to that Reporting Period (the “**Working Capital Shortfall**”), the Franchisee shall immediately:

- (a) notify the Secretary of State that a Working Capital Shortfall is likely to occur during that Reporting Period; and

- (b) provide in or with that notice supporting information (including relevant accounts and calculations) evidencing the likely Working Capital Shortfall and the amount of additional working capital that the Franchisee considers it will require to ensure that the Working Capital Shortfall is remedied; and
- (c) provide such further supporting information as the Secretary of State shall reasonably require.

9.5 The Parties shall agree or where the parties fail to agree, the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine the amount required to remedy the Working Capital Shortfall (an “**Emergency Working Capital Payment**”) and when such Emergency Working Capital Payments are required to be paid for that purpose.

9.6 The Secretary of State shall pay to the Franchisee any Emergency Working Capital Payment in accordance with the timescales agreed or determined in accordance with paragraph 9.5.

9.7 If the Franchisee fails to provide any information required by this paragraph 9, or any information in accordance with its obligations in Schedule 11.2A (Management Information) to enable the Secretary of State to calculate the amount of any Working Capital Payment or Emergency Working Capital Payment the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to the Secretary of State’s other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of WCP in accordance with this paragraph 9 but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.

9.8 The Secretary of State shall at any time on reasonable prior notice to the Franchisee be entitled to adjust the value of the Ceiling Cash Position, the Base Cash Position and/or the Floor Cash Position provided that the Secretary of State shall have first consulted the Franchisee as to any such adjustments as the Secretary of State is considering making.

**10. Working Capital Repayment**

10.1 Subject to paragraph 10.4, a Working Capital Repayment shall become payable by the Franchisee as part of a Reporting Period’s Franchise Payment where the Franchisee’s Forecast Closing Cash Position in the preceding Reporting Period is greater than the Ceiling Cash Position. The value of the Working Capital Repayment shall be calculated in accordance with paragraph 10.2.

10.2 A Working Capital Repayment, if payable in any Reporting Period, shall be equal to the following:

<b>WCR</b>	<b>=</b>	<b>FCCP – BCP</b>
------------	----------	-------------------

**Where:**

<b>FCCP</b>	the Forecast Closing Cash Position applicable to the preceding Reporting Period.
<b>BCP</b>	the Base Cash Position.

**Final Working Capital Adjustment**

10.3 The value of FWCA shall equal:

<b>FWCA</b>	<b>=</b>	<b>TotalWCP – TotalWCR</b>
-------------	----------	----------------------------

**Where:**

<b>TotalWCP</b>	the aggregate of all Working Capital Payments and all Emergency Working Capital Payments paid to the Franchisee during the term of the EMA
<b>TotalWCR</b>	the aggregate of all Working Capital Repayments paid by the Franchisee during the term of the EMA

- 10.4 The value of FWCA shall be payable as an adjustment to the Franchise Payment payable in the Reporting Period immediately following the expiry of the term of the EMA. FWCA may be positive or negative
- 10.5 If the Franchisee fails to provide any information in accordance with its obligations in Schedule 11.2A (Management Information) to enable the Secretary of State to calculate any Working Capital Repayment or the Final Working Capital Adjustment the Secretary of State shall (without prejudice to his other rights) be entitled (but not obliged) to determine the amount of WCR or FWCA (as the case may be) in accordance with this paragraph 10 but by reference to the relevant information available to the Secretary of State at the time of such determination.

**11. Management Fee and EMA Performance Payment**

11.1 Subject to paragraphs 11.2 to 11.5 (inclusive), the value of MFPP shall equal:

<b>MFPP =</b>	<b>MF + PP – PPADC</b>
---------------	------------------------

Where:

<b>MF</b>	means the Management Fee for the term of the EMA and Reporting Period 13 which shall be [REDACTED <sup>9</sup> ] (exclusive of VAT) multiplied by the sum of the number of Reporting Periods in the term of the EMA and one.
<b>PP</b>	means the sum of all of the EMA Performance Payments for the term of the EMA calculated in accordance with Schedule 8.8A (EMA Performance Payment). PP may only be a positive number.
<b>PPADC</b>	<p>means the sum of the total value of the Aggregated Costs and Revenues Liabilities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) calculated on the basis of the Franchisee’s Final Reviewed Accounts; and</li> <li>(b) as agreed or reasonably determined (in accordance with paragraphs 5.4 to 5.6 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments)) at the Payment Date for MFPP pursuant to paragraph 11.3.</li> </ul> <p>Without limiting paragraph 11.2 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments), PPADC may only be a positive number.</p>

11.2 If the value of MFPP is a negative amount:

- (a) for the purposes of paragraph 2.1, MFPP shall be deemed to equal zero; and
- (b) the Secretary of State shall be entitled to claim the value of MFPP (expressed as a positive value) from the Franchisee as an adjustment to the Franchise Payments in the period following expiry of the EMA Performance Period.

11.3 Subject to paragraph 11.4, the value of MFPP shall be made as an adjustment to the next Franchise Payment payable after:

- (a) the value of the EMA Performance Payment has been finally calculated pursuant to Schedule 8.8A (EMA Performance Payment); and

<sup>9</sup> 29 May 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

- (b) the value of the Aggregate Costs and Revenue Liabilities have been agreed or determined for the purposes of this paragraph 11.

For the avoidance of doubt MFPP shall be calculated on the basis that no interest is due pursuant to paragraph 3.6 of this Schedule 8A(EMA).

The Parties acknowledge that the adjustment referred to in 11.3 will occur following the expiry of the EMA Performance Period and may occur after the expiry of the EMA.

- 11.4 Nothing in this paragraph 11 shall limit the rights and remedies of the Secretary of State in respect of any Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone and/or SoS Claims not taken into account in the calculation of PPADC.

## 12. Further Secretary of State's rights in relation to accounting matters

- 12.1 Where the Secretary of State reasonably considers that in calculating any matter which impacts the calculation of a Franchise Payment Component, any particular item or transaction has not been accounted for on a reasonable basis (including where the accounting treatment looks to the form rather than the substance, of the item or transaction) and having regard to all circumstances, including GAAP (as may be amended from time to time), the Secretary of State shall be entitled to require it to be accounted for on such other basis as the Secretary of State may reasonably determine and notify to the Franchisee provided that the Secretary of State shall not be entitled pursuant to this paragraph to alter the accounting policies of the Franchisee from those set out in the Supporting Materials and applied through the ICWC Financial Model.

- 12.2 Where the Final Reviewed Accounts are subject to adjustment or restatement the Secretary of State shall have a discretion to require the recalculation of any affected Franchise Payment Component for the relevant Franchisee Year and to require that the Franchisee shall pay to the Secretary of State the amount which is the difference between:

- (a) any amount actually paid to the Secretary of State or adjusted in favour of the Secretary of State and the amount that would have been paid or adjusted had the affected Franchise Payment Component been originally calculated on the basis that such adjustment or revision was included in the Final Reviewed Accounts; and/or
- (b) any amount actually paid by the Secretary of State or adjusted in favour of the Franchisee and the amount that would have been paid or adjusted had the affected Franchise Payment Component been originally calculated on the basis that such adjustment or revision was included in the Final Reviewed Accounts.

- 12.3 Any payment due to the Secretary of State shall be paid by the Franchisee within thirty (30) days of the Secretary of State notifying the Franchisee that the Secretary of State requires a payment to be made pursuant to this paragraph.

## 13. Indexation

For the avoidance of doubt, it is agreed that the Franchise Payments and any sum shown in any Budget for any given Franchisee Year (or other period) shall not be subject to automatic indexation or adjustment to take into account the effect of inflation provided that this paragraph 13 is without prejudice to the adjustment of the Budget in accordance with paragraph 4 and/or the adjustment of the Franchise Payments in accordance with paragraphs 6 and 7 of this Schedule 8A(EMA).

## 14. Further obligations of the Franchisee

- 14.1 Except to the extent otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee will act as an EMA Good and Efficient Operator in all respects in connection with the operation of this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) and shall not act in a way that is contrary to the principles of the EMA by using the existence or cessation of the EMA to increase the profitability of the Franchisee.

- 14.2 The Franchisee warrants on a continuing basis and shall, if requested at any time by the Secretary of State, provide written confirmation from a statutory director of the Franchise confirming that the Franchisee is not party to any arrangement of any kind whatsoever under which:

- (a) any amounts which the Franchisee might otherwise have received from a third party are reduced, waived or otherwise suppressed; and/or
- (b) any amounts which the Franchisee might otherwise be properly obliged to pay or be liable are increased; and/or
- (c) any amounts required to be paid or accounted for by the Franchisee become or are recorded as paid or accounted for during the term of the EMA, or Reporting Period 13 (as relevant) which might otherwise be paid or accounted for in the periods preceding or following the term of the EMA or Reporting Period 13 (as relevant);
- (d) any amounts which the Franchisee might otherwise have received from a third party during the term of the EMA or Reporting Period 13 (as relevant) are recovered or accounted for in the periods preceding or following the term of the EMA or Reporting Period 13 (as relevant); and/or
- (e) Revenue is accounted for in the periods preceding or following the term of the EMA or Reporting Period 13 (as relevant) which should have been accounted for during the term of the EMA or Reporting Period 13 (as relevant).

14.3 Without limiting any other constraints which operate by virtue of any other part of the Franchise Agreement or otherwise, no application shall be made or other step taken by or on behalf of the Franchisee in respect of the winding up or striking off of the Franchisee (or any similar or analogous process) and nor shall the Franchisee permit or facilitate the same:

- (a) until all the adjustments and payments for which this Schedule 8A(EMA) provides have been made and discharged in full; and/or
- (b) without the prior written consent of the Secretary of State.

14.4 The Secretary of State shall be entitled to notify the Franchisee of any future initiatives or proposals that the Secretary of State considers may have the potential to reduce certain Actual Costs below the applicable Budgeted Costs and the Franchisee shall, acting reasonably and in good faith discuss with the Secretary of State all such matters as are relevant to the possible implementation of such initiatives.

#### 15. **Survival**

For the avoidance of doubt this Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) and Schedule 8.8A (EMA Performance Payment) and any other provisions of the Franchise Agreement reasonably required for the purpose of giving such Schedules full effect shall survive the termination or expiry of the EMA and the Franchise Term (however arising) and continue in full force and effect in accordance with their terms.

#### 16. **Review and Audit**

The "**Final Reviewed Accounts**" are a set of financial statements prepared in accordance with GAAP and delivered to the Secretary of State in accordance with the requirements in paragraph 9.4(c) of Schedule 11.2A (Management Information) which comprise, as a minimum, a profit and loss account, balance sheet and a cashflow statement containing only transactions properly accounted for which relate to the term of the EMA and Reporting Period 13, to a level of disaggregation which the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

Following the expiry of the term of the EMA, the Franchisee will commission an exercise to review the Final Reviewed Accounts, to a standard equivalent to a statutory audit to the extent that statutory audit procedures would reasonably be applied to a profit and loss account, balance sheet and cash flow statement, and will:

- (a) if required by the Secretary of State, use an external auditor;
- (b) if required by the Secretary of State, allow full access by their officials and/or representatives on an "open book" basis; and
- (c) if required by the Secretary of State, allow full access by the National Audit Office or other equivalent body on an "open book" basis.

17 **Capex Review**

At the end of the term of the EMA, the Secretary of State will review the funding of capital expenditure assumed for the calculation of the contracted Annual Franchise Payments in the ICWC Financial Model that is held in escrow. To the extent that the funding of such assumed capital expenditure through the Franchise Payments under Schedule 8.1A has been distorted by the implementation of the EMA, including by the implementation of the EMA in a part of the Franchisee Year in which the term of the EMA comes to an end, the Parties shall seek to agree an appropriate compensating amount. This amount may be payable either by the Department or by the Franchisee. In the event that this amount cannot be agreed, the SoS will reasonably determine the amount and direction of this payment.

Withdrawn March 2024

**APPENDIX 1 TO SCHEDULE 8A (EMA)****Disallowable Costs**

Any references in this Appendix 1 to Schedule 8A(EMA) to costs, payments, expenses, fees, liabilities or other amounts shall be deemed to refer to Costs and/or EMA Capital Expenditure as the context may require.

- (a) Any costs that were incurred otherwise than in accordance with those expected to be incurred by an EMA Good and Efficient Operator. Variations between Actual Costs and Budgeted Costs and/or Actual Capex and Budgeted Capex (as the case may be) likely to be considered to be inconsistent with those expected of an EMA Good and Efficient Operator include but are not limited to:
- (i) staff, director or officer costs in excess of the Budget (except where evidenced by the Franchisee as appropriate for delivery of the Franchise or of reasonable scale given the requirement for delivery of the Franchise provided that any costs referred to in paragraph (b) or paragraph (c) of this Appendix shall not in any circumstance be considered appropriate for the delivery of the Franchise or of a reasonable scale given the requirement for delivery of the Franchise);
  - (ii) costs that do not reflect the contracted position under existing contracts as at the EMA Start Date unless such change has been agreed by the Secretary of State (such agreement not to be unreasonably withheld or delayed);
  - (iii) new contracts entered into by the Franchisee which have not been procured in compliance with the Franchisee's usual procurement procedures; or
  - (iv) variations to existing contracts which have not been made in accordance with the Franchisee's usual procurement procedures;
- (b) Any bonuses, rewards or discretionary benefits paid to any staff, directors or officers under any schemes which have not previously been approved by the Secretary of State (in his absolute discretion) in writing;
- (c) Any expenses, disbursements or equivalent costs (to which the Franchisee's Expenses Policy would apply) which are incurred other than in compliance with the Franchisee's expenses policy;
- (d) Costs incurred or to be incurred by the Franchisee:
- (i) in relation to any Remedial Plan or agreements unless such costs are specifically approved in writing by the Secretary of State;
  - (ii) in removing branding or Marks under paragraph 3.2 of Schedule 14.2A (Maintenance of Operating Assets) except for branding or Marks whose removal from particular assets the Secretary of State has explicitly agreed for the purpose of this provision should be an allowable cost;
  - (iii) in relation to the inspection costs referred to in paragraph 6.4 of Schedule 11.2A (Management Information);
  - (iv) in meeting the Franchisee's owning group audit requirements to the extent these are additional to audit costs which would otherwise be incurred by the Franchisee;
  - (v) in relation to any reasonable enforcement costs incurred by the Secretary of State pursuant to clause 14.7;
- (e) Any cost that the Franchisee may incur as a result of:

- (i) it failing to comply with its obligations under or in connection with the Franchise Agreement (including the grant thereof) save in respect of any failures which result from the Franchisee acting as an EMA Good and Efficient Operator;
  - (ii) it failing to comply with its obligations under or in connection with any agreements which are ancillary to the Franchise Agreement save in respect of any failures which result from the Franchisee acting as an EMA Good and Efficient Operator;
  - (iii) it failing to comply with any applicable Laws, to the extent this gives rise to a criminal liability. Paragraph (a) above shall apply in respect of any other consequence of a failure by the Franchisee to comply with any applicable Laws; or
  - (iv) indemnifying the Secretary of State for any matter which the Franchisee is obliged to indemnify the Secretary of State pursuant to the Franchise Agreement or any agreements which are ancillary to the Franchise Agreement;
- (f) Any Facilitation Fee or Administration Fee pursuant to clause 8 (Change of Control and Facilitation Fee);
- (g) Any costs incurred by the Franchisee arising out of or in connection with a lawful demand by the Secretary of State under the Performance Bond or Season Ticket Bond or under the Funding Deed or under the PCS Bond (as defined in the Funding Deed);
- (h) Any payments, costs or other liabilities owed to Affiliates save in respect of such payments costs or other liabilities which have been incurred by the Franchisee acting as an EMA Good and Efficient Operator;
- (i) Costs of developing and protecting any intellectual property rights which are not owned by the Secretary of State or the Franchisee or are so owned, but where the costs are not ancillary to an activity included in the Budget;
- (j) Marketing or advertising costs incurred substantially to the benefit of wider group products or group brand recognition and which are not primarily for the benefit of Franchise Services;
- (k) Fines from government or regulatory bodies;
- (l) Costs of financial hedging, or gains/losses from hedging activity except with prior agreement from the Secretary of State or where such costs or gains/ losses arise from the Franchisee's participation in an industry recognised hedging scheme or activity which has been agreed by the Secretary of State or which the Secretary of State reasonably considers have been made in good faith on an arm's length basis to any Affiliate in connection with fuel hedging instruments to help manage the exposure of the Franchisee to diesel fuel costs;
- (m) The amount by which the Purchase Price payable by the Franchisee to the successor operator under the Supplemental Agreement at the end of the Franchise Period is higher than it would have been but for the Franchisee:
- (i) incurring Disallowable Costs; or
  - (ii) otherwise acting other than as EMA Good and Efficient Operator;
- (n) Third party costs in relation to the development and preparation of any Remedial Plan, required by this Agreement, excluding such costs as approved by the Secretary of State, in the Secretary of State's absolute discretion, prior to such costs being incurred by the Franchisee;
- (o) The amount of any interest payable by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 3.6 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments);

- (p) Any costs incurred by the Franchisee in pursuing or defending any claim against the Secretary of State in respect of or in connection with the Franchise Agreement or otherwise;
- (q) Any costs incurred in relation to the period prior to the EMA Start Date which an EMA Good and Efficient Operator would have usually have discharged in the period prior to the EMA Start Date;
- (r) Any costs incurred in relation to the period prior to the expiry of the term of the EMA which an EMA Good and Efficient Operator would have usually have discharged in the period following the expiry of the term of the EMA;
- (s) Any costs incurred in relation to the discharge of Committed Obligations which are in excess of the amounts an EMA Good and Efficient Operator would ordinarily have expended on discharging the Committed Obligation in accordance with the contractual programme and to minimum specification contractually required;
- (t) Where costs are incurred during the term of the EMA as the result of an obligation to incur expenditure from a fund required to be maintained pursuant to the Franchise Agreement including, but not limited to, Minor Works and the CCI Amount) such expenditure shall be a Disallowable Cost except and to the extent that it relates to expenditure required to be incurred in relation to Franchisee Years beginning after 31st March 2020;  
  
After the expiry of the EMA, the Parties shall agree or the Secretary of State shall determine the remaining amounts in such funds with reference to the amounts available to be expended in the funds and the aggregate amount of expenditure incurred since the EMA Start Date in relation to obligations related to those funds;
- (u) Interest paid or payable on PCS Advances (as defined in the Funding Deed);
- (v) Except with the prior agreement of the Secretary of State (not to be unreasonably withheld), any costs, charges, penalties, compensation or similar payments that the Franchisee may incur as a result of the termination of any contract or other arrangement;
- (w) Except with the prior agreement of the Secretary of State, losses on disposals of Fixed or Non-Current Assets;
- (x) Maintenance costs where the maintenance activity was previously scheduled to be undertaken prior to or after the term of the EMA or where (and to the extent that) it would have been reasonable and/or prudent for the maintenance to have been carried out prior to or after the term of the EMA;
- (y) Depreciation or EMA Capital Expenditure to the extent that the capital cost of acquisition of the relevant assets was (or was assumed in the ICWC Financial Model) to be funded by a third party;
- (z) Costs of any audit pursuant to paragraph 9.7(c)(ii) of Schedule 11.2A (Management Information);
- (aa) Legal, accountancy and other costs and expenses incurred in connection with the preparation and implementation of the EMA and its associated heads of terms; and
- (bb) Additional costs or expenses incurred by the Franchisee in procuring any new Performance Bond where required to do so pursuant to paragraph 4.3(c) of Schedule 12A (Financial Covenants and Bonds).

**APPENDIX 2 TO SCHEDULE 8A(EMA)**

**Reporting Period 13 Payment**

- (a) As soon as reasonably practicable following the EMA Start Date, the Secretary of State will make an "Estimated Reporting Period 13 Payment" to the Franchisee which shall be equal to:

<b>ERP13</b>	=	$((EC - ER) + ECE) + (ERC13 - AAP)$
--------------	---	-------------------------------------

**Where:**

<b>EC</b>	means the Estimated Costs for Reporting Period 13. EC may only be a positive number.
<b>ER</b>	means the Estimated Revenue for Reporting Period 13. ER may only be a positive number.
<b>ECE</b>	means the Estimated EMA Capital Expenditure for Reporting Period 13. ECE may only be a positive number.
<b>ERC13</b>	means an amount equal to the Estimated Residual Components for Reporting Period 13. ERC13 may be positive or negative.
<b>AAP</b>	means any amounts already paid in relation to the Franchise Payment for Reporting Period 13 under the Franchise Agreement prior to the implementation of the EMA. AAP may be positive or negative.

- (b) On the first day of the second Reporting Period of the term of the EMA, the "Initial Reporting Period 13 Payment" shall be payable to either the Secretary of State or the Franchisee and shall be equal to:

<b>IRP13</b>	=	$((TotalACMA - TotalARMA) + TotalACEMA) + (RC13MA - AAP) - ERP13$
--------------	---	---

**Where:**

<b>TotalACMA</b>	means the total Actual Costs of the Franchisee for Reporting Period 13 as set out in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts for Reporting Period 13. TotalACMA may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalARMA</b>	means the total Actual Revenue of the Franchisee for Reporting Period 13 as set out in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts for Reporting Period 13. TotalARMA may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalACEMA</b>	means the total Actual Capex of the Franchisee for Reporting Period 13 as set out in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts for Reporting Period 13. TotalACEMA may only be a positive number.

<b>RC13MA</b>	means an amount equal to the Residual Components for Reporting Period 13 as set out in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts for Reporting Period 13. RC13MA may be positive or negative.
<b>AAP</b>	means any amounts already paid in relation to the Franchise Payment for Reporting Period 13 under the Franchise Agreement prior to the implementation of the EMA. AAP may be positive or negative.
<b>ERP13</b>	means the Estimated Reporting Period 13 Payment calculated pursuant to paragraph (a) of this Appendix 2 to Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments). ERP13 may be positive or negative.

(c) As soon as reasonably practicable after receipt by the Secretary of State of the Reviewed 2019/20 Accounts, the "Final Reporting Period 13 Payment" shall be payable to either the Secretary of State or the Franchisee and shall be equal to:

<b>FRP13</b> =	$((\text{TotalACRA} - \text{TotalARRA}) + \text{TotalACERA}) + (\text{RC13RA} - \text{AAP}) - \text{ERP13} - \text{IRP13}$
----------------	--

Where:

<b>TotalACRA</b>	means the total Actual Costs of the Franchisee for Reporting Period 13 as set out in the Reviewed 2019/20 Accounts. TotalACRA may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalARRA</b>	means the total Actual Revenue of the Franchisee for Reporting Period 13 as set out in the Reviewed 2019/20 Accounts. TotalARRA may only be a positive number.
<b>TotalACERA</b>	means the total Actual Capex of the Franchisee for Reporting Period 13 as set out in Reviewed 2019/20 Accounts. TotalACERA may only be a positive number.
<b>RC13RA</b>	means an amount equal to the Residual Components for Reporting Period 13 as set out in the Reviewed 2019/20 Accounts. RC13RA may be positive or negative.
<b>AAP</b>	means any amounts already paid in relation to the Franchise Payment for Reporting Period 13 under the Franchise Agreement prior to the implementation of the EMA. AAP may be positive or negative.
<b>ERP13</b>	means the Estimated Reporting Period 13 Payment calculated pursuant to paragraph (a) of this Appendix 2 to Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments). ERP13 may be positive or negative.
<b>IRP13</b>	means the Initial Reporting Period 13 Payment calculated pursuant to paragraph (b) of this Appendix 2 to Schedule

	8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments). IRP13 may be positive or negative.
--	--

- (d) Where:
  - (i) **£ERP13, £IRP13 or £FRP13 (as applicable) is a positive number**, the Secretary of State shall pay that amount to the Franchisee on the date set out in the relevant paragraph above;
  - (ii) **£ERP13, £IRP13 or £FRP13 is a negative number**, the Franchisee shall pay the corresponding positive amount to the Secretary of State on the date set out in the relevant paragraph above.
- (e) The Parties acknowledge and agree that in determining either the Initial Reporting Period 13 Payment or the Final Reporting Period 13 Payment, the Secretary of State shall be entitled to review any relevant Franchisee information for the purpose of ensuring that costs accrued in Reporting Period 13 for the purposes of the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts properly relate to that Reporting Period.
- (f) As soon as reasonably practicable following the EMA Start Date, the Parties shall agree a methodology for determining how any adjustments required to the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts in preparing the Annual Audited Accounts would be identified and allocated to Reporting Period 13. The procedures agreed shall include a reconciliation of the Franchisee's net assets at the start of the Reporting Period 13 and at the end of the Reporting Period 13.
- (g) The ICWC Section of the Management Accounts incorporating the adjustments identified for Reporting Period 13 pursuant to paragraph (f) of this Appendix 2 to Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments) shall be the "Reviewed 2019/20 Accounts" for the purposes of this Schedule 8A(EMA). If required by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall allow full access by their officials and/or representatives on an "open book" basis for the purposes of reviewing the incorporation of such adjustments; and
- (h) Any PCS up to the amount drawn down during Reporting Period 13 may be repayable from the amounts paid to the Franchisee pursuant to this Appendix 2 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Franchise Payments).

Withdrawn March 2024

## Appendix 3 to Schedule 1

## Schedule 8.8A (EMA Performance Payment)

## SCHEDULE 8.8A

## EMA Performance Payment

## 1. DEFINITIONS

For the purposes of this Schedule 8.8A (EMA Performance Payment) only, the following words and expressions shall have the following meanings unless otherwise specified:

<b>"EMA Criterion"</b>	means each of the criteria set out in Appendix 3 of this Schedule 8.8A, in respect of which the Franchisee's performance shall be measured in an EMA Review and for which a score shall be awarded in the EMA Review Scorecard (and <b>"EMA Criteria"</b> means the plural of EMA Criterion);
<b>"EMA Performance Period"</b>	means: (a) the period commencing on the EMA Start Date and ending at 1.59 a.m. on 20 September 2020, or such earlier date of termination of the EMA; and (b) where the term of the EMA is extended in accordance with clause 3.3 of the EMA, each Extended EMA Performance Period;
<b>"EMA Review"</b>	means a review carried out (or to be carried out) in accordance with Appendix 1 of this Schedule 8.8A;
<b>"EMA Review Checklist"</b>	means, in respect of an EMA Review, a checklist completed (or, as the case may be, to be completed) substantially in the form of that set out in Appendix 2 of this Schedule 8.8A;
<b>"EMA Review Meeting"</b>	means, in respect of the EMA Review, a meeting held between the Parties to discuss the performance of the Franchisee during the relevant EMA Performance Period;
<b>"EMA Review Scorecard"</b>	means, in respect of an EMA Review, a scorecard completed (or, as the case may be, to be completed) by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 5 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A;
<b>"Extended EMA Performance Period"</b>	means, in the event that the term of the EMA is extended in accordance with clause 3.3 of the EMA, each further period following the end of the preceding EMA Performance Period, comprising six (6) additional Reporting Periods (or less in the event that the EMA is terminated prior to the expiry of the relevant Extended EMA Performance Period).

2. **CALCULATION OF THE EMA PERFORMANCE PAYMENT (PP)**

2.1 The Performance Payment (PP) shall be the sum of the three amounts corresponding to the Franchisee’s EMA Review score for the EMA Criteria as set out below:

EMA Criterion	EMA Review Scorecard score for relevant EMA Criterion	PP £
Operational performance	3	[REDACTED <sup>10</sup> ]
	2	[REDACTED]
	1	[REDACTED]
Customer experience	3	[REDACTED]
	2	[REDACTED]
	1	[REDACTED]
Acting as an EMA Good and Efficient Operator	3	[REDACTED]
	2	[REDACTED]
	1	[REDACTED]

2.2 The EMA Performance Payment for each EMA Performance Period assumes an EMA Performance Period of six (6) Reporting Periods. If the actual duration of an EMA Performance Period is less than six (6) Reporting Periods, the EMA Performance Payment with respect to such EMA Performance Period shall be calculated on a pro rata basis.

Withdrawn March 2024

<sup>10</sup> 29 May 2020 (Date of Redactions Approval) - Where text has been omitted from the document – this is because the Secretary of State has decided to exclude the text in accordance with the provisions within the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

**APPENDIX 1 TO SCHEDULE 8.8A****EMA Review****1. PURPOSE OF THE EMA REVIEW**

- 1.1 The purpose of an EMA Review is for the Secretary of State to undertake a review of the Franchisee's performance in relation to the Franchise Services over the course of the relevant EMA Performance Period.
- 1.2 The Parties agree that more than one EMA Review may be undertaken by the Secretary of State where the variations to the Franchise Agreement imposed pursuant to the EMA are extended in accordance with clause 3.3 of the EMA.
- 1.3 The Secretary of State will carry out an EMA Review with respect to each EMA Performance Period.
- 1.4 At each periodic Franchise Performance Meeting, progress against the three EMA Criteria shall be discussed and reviewed by the Parties.
- 1.5 Each EMA Review shall be carried out in accordance with the process set out in this Schedule 8.8A.

**2. NOTICE OF EMA REVIEW MEETING**

- 2.1 The Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee of the date, time and location for the relevant EMA Review Meeting by no later than the end of the relevant EMA Performance Period, provided always that the EMA Review Meeting shall take place no earlier than the last day in the relevant EMA Performance Period and no later than 60 days after the end of the relevant EMA Performance Period.
- 2.2 For the avoidance of doubt, nothing in this Schedule 8.8A shall prevent the Parties from discussing any matter relevant to an EMA Review outside of the relevant EMA Review Meeting.

**3. EMA REVIEW CHECKLIST**

- 3.1 Not less than 30 days prior to the end of the relevant EMA Performance Period, the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, shall notify the Franchisee in writing of any additional information that the Franchisee shall be required to submit at the same time as the completed EMA Review Checklist.
- 3.2 Not less than fifteen (15) days prior to end of the EMA Performance Period, the Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State in writing of any matters in addition to those set out in the EMA Review Checklist or the information notified to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 0 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A, which the Franchisee considers to be relevant for the EMA Review. The Secretary of State shall, within ten (10) days of receiving such notice, provide written confirmation to the Franchisee of whether the Secretary of State considers such matters to be relevant to the EMA Review.
- 3.3 As soon as reasonably practicable after the end of an EMA Performance Period, and in any event no later than 10 days after the end of an EMA Performance Period, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State a duly completed copy of the EMA Review Checklist in respect of the EMA Performance Period.

- 3.4 The EMA Review Checklist delivered by the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 3.3 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A shall include written commentary from the Franchisee in respect of the EMA Performance Period covering:
- (a) each of the matters listed in the EMA Review Checklist;
  - (b) any other such matter notified by the Secretary of State to the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 0 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A; and
  - (c) any other matter which the Secretary of State has confirmed as relevant for the EMA Review in accordance with paragraph 0 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A.
- 3.5 The Secretary of State shall provide the Franchisee with:
- (a) written commentary on the completed EMA Review Checklist (including any commentary provided by the Franchisee under paragraph 3.4 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A); and
  - (b) any information additional to that contained in the EMA Review Checklist which the Secretary of State has used or intends to use to assess the Franchisee's performance,
- in each case, no later than ten (10) days prior to the EMA Review Meeting.

#### 4. **EMA REVIEW MEETING**

- 4.1 The EMA Review Meeting shall take place at the date, time and location notified by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 0 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A and shall be attended by representatives of each of the Secretary of State and the Franchisee.
- 4.2 The Franchisee shall ensure that the representatives of the Franchisee at the EMA Review Meeting include such:
- (a) appropriate and qualified personnel of the Franchisee;
  - (b) directors and/or senior managers of the Franchisee; and
  - (c) directors and/or senior managers of the Parent,
- as the Secretary of State may reasonably require.

- 4.3 At the EMA Review Meeting the Parties shall discuss the Franchisee's performance by reference to the EMA Review Checklist, together with any supporting commentary, documents or evidence submitted by the Franchisee to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraphs 0 and 0 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A and any commentary and/or information provided by the Secretary of State to the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 0 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A.

#### 5. **EMA REVIEW SCORING**

- 5.1 The Secretary of State shall provide to the Franchisee, no later than ten (10) days following the EMA Review Meeting, a duly completed EMA Review Scorecard setting out the Franchisee's performance in each of the EMA Criteria for the EMA Performance Period.
- 5.2 The Franchisee shall be scored 3, 2 or 1 in relation to each EMA Criterion.
- 5.3 The EMA Review shall be complete once the Secretary of State has sent a duly completed EMA Review Scorecard to the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 0 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A.

- 5.4 Scores in the EMA Review Scorecard shall be awarded by the Secretary of State having regard to the matters set out in the EMA Review Scorecard. One single, integer, overall score shall be awarded in relation to each EMA Criterion based on the Secretary of State's assessment of the Franchisee's performance in respect of that EMA Criterion against the EMA Review Scorecard and taking into account:
- (a) the EMA Review Checklist provided to the Secretary of State by the Franchisee in accordance with paragraphs 0 and 0 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A;
  - (b) any commentary provided to the Franchisee by the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 0 of Appendix 1 to this Schedule 8.8A; and
  - (c) any discussions between the Franchisee and the Secretary of State at the EMA Review Meeting.
- 5.5 The Franchisee shall receive a EMA Performance Payment, in accordance with Schedule 8.A(EMA) (Payments), if the Franchisee scores 2 or above with respect to one or more of the EMA Criteria.
- 5.6 The Franchisee shall not receive a EMA Performance Payment if the Franchisee scores 1 in relation to all three of the EMA Criteria.
- 5.7 If the Franchisee:
- (a) is operating at a level that would, or would likely, be scored "1"; or
  - (b) has received a score of "1",

in relation to any of the EMA Criteria during an EMA Performance Period, then the Secretary of State may require a Remedial Plan and the provisions of Schedule 10.1A of the Franchise Agreement shall apply.

## APPENDIX 2 TO SCHEDULE 8.8A

## EMA Review Checklist

## 1. OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE

A report on the Franchisee's operational performance, by reference to the Plan of the Day, including:

- (a) the level of performance achieved against the Plan of the Day, and an explanation of the level of performance achieved relative to the Plan of the Day;
- (b) an explanatory note setting out, if relevant, any act, omission or failure of a third party which has impacted performance and the extent of that impact, along with supporting evidence (except for where the impact exclusively relates to COVID-19); and
- (c) details and supporting evidence of any actions undertaken to mitigate any impacts on performance, including work with Network Rail regarding infrastructure.

## 2. CUSTOMER EXPERIENCE

A report on the customer experience delivered by the Franchisee, including:

- (a) evidence of train and Station cleaning schedules;
- (b) details of complaints received relating to quality of service including cleanliness and upkeep of Stations and the trains, staff presence/helpfulness, accessibility and information provision; and
- (c) details of staff presence, including evidence of staffing rosters having been adhered to as far as possible.

## 3. EMA GOOD AND EFFICIENT OPERATOR

A report detailing the extent to which the Franchisee has acted as an EMA Good and Efficient Operator, including:

- (a) evidence of any ways in which the Franchisee has sought to identify ways to run the Franchise more efficiently and avoid nugatory costs, acting as an EMA Good and Efficient Operator, including details of the level of supporting evidence to those proposals;
- (b) evidence of appropriate revenue protection being applied in the interests of the taxpayer and/or otherwise evidence that the Franchisee has followed government guidance prevailing at the time regarding revenue collection; and
- (c) evidence of plans in place to return the operations and business to pre-COVID-19 levels of operation, including encouraging the public to travel on public transport where appropriate.

APPENDIX 3 TO SCHEDULE 8.8A

EMA Review Scorecard

	Operational Performance	Customer Experience	EMA Good and Efficient Operator
3: Good	<p>The Franchisee has delivered the Passenger Services in accordance with the applicable Plan of the Day (with minor exceptions only).</p>	<p>The Franchisee has provided high levels of cleanliness at Stations and on trains.</p> <p>The Franchisee has ensured that all Stations and trains have been staffed as required to enable service to continue at a good or very good standard.</p> <p>Trains and Stations have been maintained as appropriate.</p> <p>The Franchisee has provided a high quality journey experience for all passengers including providing information at all Stations and trains at all times, where possible.</p>	<p>The Franchisee has continued to make every effort to grow the business, offering incentives for appropriate travel (for example, ensuring those who have a legitimate need to travel are encouraged to use the train where it is appropriate to do so).</p> <p>The Franchisee has worked collaboratively with other Train Operators and/other rail industry bodies (including Network Rail) to provide an appropriate service to passengers, ensuring that passengers have as much choice as desirable, whilst taking into account demand.</p> <p>The Franchisee has proactively made suggestions and developed plans for restoring service, operations and business to pre-COVID-19 levels as soon as possible after the expiry of the EMA.</p> <p>The Franchisee has been responsive to the Secretary of State's requests and fully cooperated in dealing with national emergencies.</p>
2: Acceptable	<p>The Franchisee has delivered the</p>	<p>The Franchisee has ensured that trains</p>	<p>The Franchisee has sought to operate the</p>

Withdrawn March 2024

	<b>Operational Performance</b>	<b>Customer Experience</b>	<b>EMA Good and Efficient Operator</b>
	<p>Passenger Services in accordance with the applicable Plan of the Day (with some exceptions).</p>	<p>and Stations have continued to be cleaned to an acceptable standard.</p> <p>The Franchisee has deployed staff on the same or similar basis as usual, with an emphasis on provision of customer service throughout the period.</p> <p>Trains and Stations have been maintained to an acceptable level.</p> <p>The Franchisee has provided an acceptable level of journey experience for passengers including providing information at Stations and trains at all times, where possible.</p>	<p>Franchise as far as possible as if they were still on revenue/cost risk, avoiding nugatory costs including ensuring revenue is protected throughout the duration of the EMA in accordance with the prevailing advice from the Secretary of State.</p>
<p>1: Below acceptable standard</p>	<p>The Franchisee has materially failed to deliver the Passenger Services in accordance with the applicable Plan of the Day.</p>	<p>The Franchisee has failed to maintain cleanliness of trains and Stations to an acceptable level.</p> <p>The Franchisee has failed to deploy staff in a way to enable Stations and services to be maintained for passengers.</p> <p>The Franchisee has failed to maintain the trains and Stations at an acceptable level.</p> <p>The Franchisee has failed to provide an acceptable level of journey experience for passengers and/or has failed to provide information at Stations and trains.</p>	<p>The Franchisee has failed to mitigate nugatory costs or manage revenue loss throughout the term of the EMA in accordance with the prevailing advice from the Secretary of State.</p> <p>The Franchisee has failed to respond to the Secretary of State's requests and/or failed to cooperate in dealing with national emergencies.</p>

Appendix 4 to Schedule 1

Schedule 11.2A (Management Information)

Withdrawn March 2024

## SCHEDULE 11.2A

## Management Information

**1. Corporate Information**

1.1 The Franchisee shall provide the following information to the Secretary of State on the Start Date and shall notify the Secretary of State of any change to such information within twenty one (21) days of such change:

- (a) its name;
- (b) its business address and registered office;
- (c) its directors and company secretary;
- (d) its auditors;
- (e) its trading name or names; and
- (f) to the best of the Franchisee's knowledge and belief, having made due and diligent enquiry, the identity of all persons holding, separately or acting by agreement, directly or indirectly, the right to cast more than twenty per cent (20%) of the votes at general meetings of the Franchisee.

1.2 The Franchisee shall inform the Secretary of State of any:

- (a) material change or proposed material change in its business;
- (b) material change in or restructuring of the capitalisation or financing of the Franchisee, any Parent or any Guarantor; and
- (c) litigation or other dispute which may have a material effect on its business.

For the purposes of paragraph 1.2(a), a material change or proposed material change shall include the employment or the termination of employment of any Key Personnel or the termination of any Key Contract.

**2. Information about Assets used in the Franchise**

The Franchisee shall at all times during the Franchise Term maintain (and shall provide copies to the Secretary of State when requested to do so from time to time) records covering the following information:

- (a) for each Primary Franchise Asset or other asset which is the subject of, or operated under, a Key Contract:
  - (i) the progress and completion of all work described in the maintenance schedules and manuals;
  - (ii) all operating manuals (including any safety related regulations);
  - (iii) all permits, licences, certificates or other documents required to operate such asset; and
  - (iv) a printed or electronic list of all assets owned by the Franchisee from time to time (excluding, unless otherwise requested by the Secretary of State, any office furniture and consumable items); and
- (b) each capital asset acquired by the Franchisee during the term of the EMA with a value of over £50,000, including the Franchisee's source of funding for such asset.

### 3. Identification of Key Personnel and Provision of Organisation Chart

3.1 The Franchisee shall identify and provide to the Secretary of State a schedule of Key Personnel who shall be employed by the Franchisee in the performance of the Franchise Agreement and an organisational chart detailing the responsibilities and reporting lines of each of the Key Personnel. This shall include but not be limited to the following persons:

- (a) a chief executive officer whose role will include the overall management of the operation of the Franchise Services;
- (b) a managing director for the Passenger Services who shall be responsible for the delivery of the Passenger Services;
- (c) a managing director for the Shadow Operator Services who shall be responsible for the delivery of the Shadow Operator Services and who shall act as Critical Friend to HS2 Limited;
- (d) a train service delivery director, whose role will include responsibility for ensuring compliance by the Franchisee with Schedule 7.1A (Operational Performance);
- (e) a safety director, whose role will include responsibility for ensuring that the Franchisee complies with its legal obligations in relation to the Franchise Services including the Safety Certificate; and
- (f) a finance director, whose role will include responsibility in relation to the ICWC Financial Model, IOC Modelling Suite, Forecast IOC Revenue, Accepted Programme Modelling Suite, Transitional Programme Modelling Suite, Budget, the Final Reviewed Accounts and the provision of other financial data to Secretary of State.

3.2 The Franchisee shall nominate a board level director of the Franchisee (or at the Secretary of State's discretion, a director of any Parent or any appropriate Affiliate of the Franchisee) within five (5) Weekdays of the date of this Agreement. Such director's responsibilities shall include overseeing, at a strategic level, the Franchisee's interface with the Secretary of State in relation to sections 119 to 121 (inclusive) of the Act and co-ordinating relevant activities and delivery of counter terrorist security on behalf of the Franchisee in connection with the Franchisee's compliance with relevant instructions issued by the Secretary of State under section 119 of the Act from time to time. Such director shall be identified by job title in the organisation chart referred to in paragraph 3.3 and shall be deemed part of the Key Personnel.

3.3 On or before the Start Date the Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State a schedule of Key Personnel and an organisation chart detailing the responsibilities and reporting lines of each of the Key Personnel and shall update such schedule and chart (and provide copies to the Secretary of State promptly thereafter) as and when any changes occur.

### 4. Operational Performance Information

4.1 The Franchisee shall provide to the Secretary of State the information specified in Appendix 2 (Operational Performance Information) to this Schedule 11.2 at the times specified therein.

### 5. Maintenance of Records

5.1 The Franchisee shall at all times create and maintain true, up to date and complete records, books and other materials relating to the:

- (a) operation and maintenance of Franchise Assets;
- (b) operation of the Franchise Services; and
- (c) financial performance of the Franchise,

in each case, in exercising that degree of care, skill, diligence, prudence, efficiency, foresight and timeliness which would reasonably be expected from a prudent and leading Train Operator and in order to fulfil the

requirements of this Franchise Agreement including in relation to maintenance of the Franchise as a going concern in accordance with paragraph 1 of Schedule 14.1 (Maintenance of Franchise).

- 5.2 Unless otherwise agreed by the Secretary of State, all records, books and materials required to be maintained by the Franchisee in accordance with this Schedule 11.2 shall be held in a form that is capable of audit for a period of not less than six (6) years following the Expiry Date or the date of any earlier termination of this Agreement.
- 5.3 References to records, books and materials in this Schedule 11.2 shall include records, books and materials maintained under any Previous Franchise Agreement to the extent that such records relate to services equivalent to the Franchise Services and the Franchisee has access to them (which it shall use all reasonable endeavours to secure). Notwithstanding the requirements of paragraphs 5.2 and 5.4, the Franchisee shall only be required to hold such records, books and materials created under any Previous Franchise Agreement for a period of six (6) years following the date of this Agreement.
- 5.4 The Franchisee shall not be responsible for any records, books or materials maintained under any Previous Franchise Agreement, as referred to in paragraph 5.3, being true, complete and up to date. As soon as reasonably practicable after becoming aware that any such records, books or materials are not true, complete and up to date, the Franchisee shall take all reasonable steps to remedy any such deficiency, and shall thereafter maintain such records, books or materials in accordance with paragraph 5.1.

## 6. Right to Inspect

- 6.1 The Franchisee shall, if requested by the Secretary of State, allow the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers:
- (a) to inspect and copy any records referred to in this Schedule 11.2, paragraph 17 of Schedule 18.1 (Shadow Operations) or Schedule 8A(EMA) and the Secretary of State may verify any such records; and/or
  - (b) to inspect and copy at any reasonable time any books, records and any other material kept by or on behalf of the Franchisee and/or its auditors and any assets (including the Franchise Assets) used by the Franchisee in connection with the Franchise Services.
- 6.2 The Franchisee shall make available to the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers the information referred to in paragraph 6.1 and grant or procure the grant of such access (including to or from third parties) as the Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers shall reasonably require in connection therewith. The obligation of the Franchisee under this paragraph 6.2 shall include an obligation on the Franchisee to grant or procure the grant of such access to premises (including third party premises) where the information referred to in paragraph 6.1 is kept by or on behalf of the Franchisee.
- 6.3 The Secretary of State, the Secretary of State's representatives and advisers shall be permitted to take photographs, film or make a video recording, or make any other kind of record of any such inspection.
- 6.4 If any inspection reveals that information previously supplied to the Secretary of State was, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, inaccurate in any material respect or if such inspection reveals any other contravention of the Franchisee's obligations under the Franchise Agreement which the Secretary of State considers to be material, the costs of any such inspection shall be borne by the Franchisee and which, for the avoidance of doubt, shall be Disallowable Costs pursuant to Appendix 1 to Schedule 8A(EMA).

## 7. Information to the Passengers' Council and Local Authorities

The Franchisee shall comply with any reasonable requests and guidance issued by the Secretary of State from time to time in respect of the provision of information to and co-operation and consultation with the Passengers' Council and Local Authorities.

**8. Periodic Update Reports**

- 8.1 The Franchisee shall prepare and submit to the Secretary of State a periodic report in each Reporting Period which shall:
- (a) contain updates on the Franchisee's progress in complying with its Committed Obligations together with any other information as the Secretary of State may specify from time to time;
  - (b) relate to the period preceding the date of the report, unless another period is reasonably required by the Secretary of State; and
  - (c) be disaggregated to the extent required by the Secretary of State.
- 8.2 Where, as part of the periodic report referred to in paragraph 8.1, the Secretary of State requires the Franchisee to provide information and/or details in addition to those required pursuant to paragraph 8.1, the Franchisee shall ensure that the periodic report includes such additional information and/or details subject to the Franchisee having received at least twenty eight (28) days' notice of the additional information and/or details required by the Secretary of State.

**9. Financial Information****9.1 Accounting Records**

- 9.1 The Franchisee shall prepare and at all times during the Franchise Term maintain true, up to date and complete accounting records as are required to be kept under section 386 of the Companies Act 2006. Such records shall be prepared on a consistent basis for each Reporting Period. In particular, the Franchisee shall ensure that such accounting records are produced and maintained in a form which distinguishes between transactions which reasonably and properly relate, on the accruals basis, to the period during which the EMA is in force, and those which do not.

- 9.1A The Franchisee shall ensure that each of the:

- (a) Shadow Operator Section of the Management Accounts; and
- (b) Shadow Operator Section of the Annual Management Accounts,

reports costs (and where relevant revenues) on a line by line basis (for each and every item) which matches the corresponding lines in the relevant Cost Baseline and Transitional Budget (as the case may be) each as most recently Placed in Escrow.

**9.2 Reporting Period Financial Information**

- (a) The Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State, within ten (10) Weekdays of the end of each Reporting Period:

(i) the Management Accounts for such Reporting Period, setting out in separate sections, the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts and the Shadow Operator Section of the Management Accounts, each such section including a cash flow statement, profit and loss account and balance sheet for that Reporting Period and cumulatively for the Franchisee Year to date ensuring that:

- (A) the profit and loss account for the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts shall adopt the same format and structure as either (a) the Financial Formats; or (b) the P&L2 tab of the ICWC Financial Model (whichever format and structure is has the more detailed breakdown of costs and revenues) except to the extent expressly agreed otherwise by the Secretary of State from time to time for this purpose; and
- (B) in particular, Costs, EMA Capital Expenditure and Revenues shall be allocated consistently to the level of disaggregation required by the Financial Formats or the

P&L2 tab of the ICWC Financial Model and there shall be no netting off between those disaggregated areas;

- (ii) written confirmation that the Management Accounts, to the best of the knowledge, information and belief of the board of directors of the Franchisee, contain a true and accurate reflection of the current revenues, costs, assets and liabilities of the Franchisee (including contingent assets or liabilities and known business risks and opportunities) appropriately allocated to the ICWC and Shadow Operator Sections respectively of the Management Accounts and, to the extent that they do not, identify in a written report relevant issues in reasonable detail and provide such further information that the Secretary of State shall reasonably require in relation; and
  - (iii) written confirmation from a statutory director of the Franchisee that the Franchisee has complied with the restrictions applicable during the Lock-up Period pursuant to paragraph 3 of Schedule 12A (Financial Covenants and Bonds).
- (b) The Management Accounts shall also set out:
- (i) the Franchisee's available cash balance on the final day of the Reporting Period to which the Management Accounts relate;
  - (ii) the Franchisee's forecast of:
    - (A) the Franchisee's daily cash balance for the period of thirteen (13) weeks following the Reporting Period to which the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts relate;
    - (B) the amount of Working Capital Payment (if any) that the Franchisee forecasts that it will require pursuant to paragraph 9 of Schedule 8A(EMA) in respect of the three (3) Reporting Periods following the Reporting Period to which the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts relate;
    - (C) payments to and from Affiliates of the Franchisee; and
    - (D) profit and loss, cash flow and balance sheet provided in accordance with the Initial Budget (together with a detailed and comprehensive written explanation as to any changes in such forecasts from the previous such forecasts provided pursuant to the provisions of paragraph 9.2(b) of this Schedule 11.2A) for each of the following thirteen (13) Reporting Periods;
  - (iii)
    - (A) a comparison of the Franchisee's financial performance during such period against the forecast provided by the Franchisee in the then current Business Plan;
    - (B) a comparison on a line by line basis of Actual Costs and Actual Revenue of the Franchisee compared to the Budgeted Costs and Estimated Revenue for that Reporting Period; and
    - (C) a detailed statement and a detailed and comprehensive written explanation of any material differences between the actual payments to and from Affiliates of the Franchisee and the forecast of such payments as referred to in paragraph 9.2(b)(ii)(C);
  - (iv) a comparison of the Franchisee's cumulative financial performance during the Franchisee Year in which such period occurs against the forecast referred to in paragraph 9.2(b)(ii);
  - (v) a detailed statement and a detailed and comprehensive written explanation of any material differences between the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts and the forecast referred

to in paragraph 9.2(b)(ii) and a detailed explanation of the variances between Actual Costs and Budgeted Costs and Actual Revenues and Estimated Revenue and a description of: (1) the steps which have been taken by the Franchisee to address and mitigate any Costs in excess of Budgeted Costs and/or Estimated Revenue shortfall; and/or (2) which could otherwise be taken for that purpose;

- (vi) where the level of financial performance reported in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts is, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, materially worse than forecast by the Franchisee in its current Business Plan, the Secretary of State may require the Franchisee to prepare and submit to the Secretary of State, as soon as reasonably practicable, a Financial Action Plan to ensure that the level of financial performance forecast in its current Business Plan for the remainder of the currency of that Business Plan is achieved and the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement such Financial Action Plan;
  - (vii) a detailed statement and explanation of any Agreed Funding Commitment and PCS Advances and/or PCG Advances (each as defined in the Funding Deed) provided and/or repaid during such Reporting Period and any repayments made during such Reporting Period in respect of (i) previously provided Agreed Funding Commitments as against the AFC Plan (as defined in the Funding Deed) and (ii) PCS Advances and/or PCG Advances;
  - (viii) separate identification of any costs, revenues, balances and accounting adjustments in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts which relate to the provision of the PMO Services;
  - (ix) explanations of any prior period or retrospective adjustments to transactions in the previous Management Accounts which impact the cumulative costs and/or revenues as reported in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts and/or the Shadow Operator Section of the Management Accounts for any Reporting Period; and
  - (x) separate identification of payments to or from any Affiliate of the Franchisee.
- (c) Within five (5) Weekdays after receipt of the Management Accounts for each Reporting Period in accordance with paragraphs (a) and (b) above, the Secretary of State shall notify the Franchisee of any further information, explanation or analysis which the Secretary of State requires in relation to the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts (including information that the Secretary of State requires in relation to the calculation of the Franchise Payment under the provisions of Schedule 8.1A (Franchise Payments)) and the Franchisee shall promptly provide such further information or analysis.

**9.3 Quarterly Financial Information**

NOT USED

**9.4 Annual Financial Information**

- (a) Within fifteen (15) Weekdays of the end of each Franchisee Year, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State its Annual Management Accounts for that Franchisee Year, divided between Reporting Periods within the term of the EMA and Reporting Periods not within the term of the EMA. For Reporting Periods within the term of the EMA, line items should be disaggregated between a section in relation to Actual Costs and a section in relation to Actual Revenues, and Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone, Accrued Disallowable Costs and Accrued Revenue Foregone.
- (b) Within four (4) Reporting Periods after the end of each Franchisee Year, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State the following information:
  - (i) certified true copies of its annual report and Annual Audited Accounts for that Franchisee Year, together with copies of all related directors' and auditors' reports;

- (ii) a detailed reconciliation disaggregating Actual Costs and Actual Revenues, and Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone, Accrued Disallowable Costs and Accrued Revenue Foregone in the Annual Audited Accounts reconciled to: (1) each of the periodic Management Accounts within the term of the EMA within that Franchisee Year; (2) periodic Management Accounts in relation to all other Reporting Periods in that Franchisee Year (if any); (3) Annual Management Accounts in relation to the term of the EMA within that Franchisee Year; and (4) Annual Management Accounts in relation to all other Reporting Periods within that Franchisee Year (if any), all in a format to be from time to time reasonably specified by the Secretary of State (the "Audited Accounts Reconciliation"). The Audited Accounts Reconciliation shall:
  - (A) disaggregate the costs and revenues in the Annual Audited Accounts so as to report against (and show in a format consistent with that used in) each Section of the Management Accounts and Annual Management Accounts;
  - (B) facilitate the identification of Actual Costs and Actual Revenues as reported in the Management Accounts and easy comparison of Actual Costs with the Budget;
  - (C) demonstrate that the Actual Shadow Operator Costs reported in the Shadow Operator Section of the Annual Management Accounts are consistent with the Actual Shadow Operator Costs as reported in the Annual Audited Accounts; and
  - (D) demonstrate that the Actual Shadow Operator Revenue reported in the Shadow Operator Section of the Annual Management Accounts are consistent with the Actual Shadow Operator Revenue as reported in the Annual Audited Accounts;
- (iii) a statement from the Franchisee's auditors (in a format to be reasonably specified by the Secretary of State from time to time, on the basis of providing the Secretary of State with reasonable assurance) that the disaggregation required by the Audited Accounts Reconciliation in accordance with paragraph 9.4(b)(ii) has been undertaken accurately;
- (iv) Not used
- (v) a statement from the Franchisee's auditors confirming that GAAP has been applied in a fair and consistent manner; and
- (vi) Not used
- (c) Within two (2) Reporting Periods after the end of the last EMA Performance Period, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State the following information:
  - (i) certified true copies of its Final Reviewed Accounts for the EMA Performance Periods in aggregate, together with copies of all related reports provided by auditors or other reviewers (if any) pursuant to paragraph 16 of Schedule 8A(EMA);
  - (ii) a detailed reconciliation disaggregating Actual Costs and Actual Revenues, and Disallowable Costs, Revenue Foregone, Accrued Disallowable Costs and Accrued Revenue Foregone of the Final Reviewed Accounts reconciled to the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts in relation to the period of the term of the EMA, in a format to be from time to time reasonably specified by the Secretary of State (the "**Final Reviewed Accounts Reconciliation**"). The Final Reviewed Accounts Reconciliation shall:
    - (A) disaggregate the costs and revenues in the Final Reviewed Accounts so as to report against (and show in a format consistent with that used in) the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts within the EMA Performance Period(s); and
    - (B) facilitate the identification of Actual Costs and Actual Revenues as reported in the ICWC Section of the Management Accounts within the EMA Performance Period(s) and easy comparison of Actual Costs with the Budget;

Withdrawn March 2024

- (iii) a statement from the Franchisee's auditors (in a format to be reasonably specified by the Secretary of State from time to time, on the basis of providing the Secretary of State with reasonable assurance) that the disaggregation required by the Final Reviewed Accounts Reconciliation in accordance with paragraph 9.4(c)(ii) has been undertaken accurately; and
- (iv) a statement from the Franchisee's auditors confirming that GAAP has been applied in a fair and consistent manner.

#### 9.5 Accounting Standards and Practices

- (a) Each set of Management Accounts and Annual Management Accounts shall:
  - (i) be in the formats as from time to time agreed between the Parties or in such other format as the Secretary of State may reasonably specify from time to time;
  - (ii) be prepared:
    - (A) in accordance with the Franchisee's obligations in clause 6.1 (General Obligations); and
    - (B) consistently in accordance with the Franchisee's normal accounting policies, details of which shall be supplied on request to the Secretary of State; and
  - (iii) identify to the reasonable satisfaction of the Secretary of State, any changes in such accounting policies from those policies that were applied in preparing each of the profit and loss account, the cash flow projection and the balance sheet used for the purposes of preparing the Budget.
- (b) The Annual Audited Accounts shall:
  - (i) be prepared and audited in accordance with GAAP, consistently applied and in accordance with the Companies Act 2006; and
  - (ii) give a true and fair view of:
    - (A) the state of affairs, profits and financial condition of the Franchisee for the period covered by such accounts; and
    - (B) the amount of its total revenue (being all revenue whatsoever from any source obtained from any commercial or non-commercial activity or undertaking of the Franchisee) such revenue to be disaggregated by reference to revenue derived by the Franchisee from:
      - (i) the sale of tickets;
      - (ii) income received from the relevant Infrastructure Manager pursuant to Schedule 4 and Schedule 8 to the Relevant Track Access Agreement;
      - (iii) car park revenue; and
      - (iv) other income;
    - (C) NOT USED.

#### 9.5A Changes to accounting policies

The Franchisee shall not, without the express written consent of the Secretary of State, make any alteration to its accounting policies or basis of preparation in relation to its Management Accounts, Annual Management Accounts, Annual Audited Accounts or Final Reviewed Accounts.

## 9.6 Parent and Guarantor Accounts

The Franchisee shall, upon the request of the Secretary of State, promptly deliver to, or procure delivery to, the Secretary of State, certified true copies of the annual reports and audited accounts of each Parent, each Guarantor and any Affiliate of the Franchisee, together with copies of all related directors' and auditors' reports. If any Parent, Guarantor or Affiliate of the Franchisee is domiciled outside England and Wales, the equivalent documents in the jurisdiction of residence of that Parent, Guarantor or Affiliate (as applicable) shall be delivered to the Secretary of State.

## 9.7 Secretary of State Audit

- (a) Without prejudice to any other rights of the Secretary of State under the Franchise Agreement, the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives shall be permitted to inspect at any time the books, records and any other material kept by or on behalf of the Franchisee in order to check or audit any item contained in or relating to the Management Accounts in so far as they relate to:
- (i) the Franchisee's obligations under paragraph 9 of Schedule 8A(EMA); and
  - (ii) the calculation of the Franchise Payment (and each component thereto) in accordance with Schedule 8A(EMA) (Payments;) and/or Schedule 8.8A (EMA Performance Payments).
- (b) The Franchisee shall make available to the Secretary of State and the Secretary of State's representatives such information and grant such access or procure the grant of such access (including to or from third parties) as they shall reasonably require in connection with any audit to be carried out pursuant to paragraph 9.7(a).
- (c) If any audit carried out pursuant to paragraph 9.7(a) reveals, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, any material inaccuracy in the Management Accounts, the Annual Management Accounts and/or the Annual Audited Accounts then:
- (i) the Secretary of State may exercise the Secretary of State's rights as described in paragraph 12.1 or 12.2 of Schedule 8A(EMA) (Payments); and
  - (ii) the Franchisee shall pay all reasonable costs of any such audit as a monitoring cost pursuant to paragraph 7.4 of Schedule 10.1A (Procedure for remedying a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement) which shall, for the avoidance of doubt, be treated as Disallowable Costs pursuant to Appendix 1 to Schedule 8A(EMA).

## 9.8 Adjustment and Restatement of the Annual Audited Accounts

The Franchisee shall promptly notify the Secretary of State as soon as it becomes aware of any requirement to adjust or restate the Annual Audited Accounts or Final Reviewed Accounts and shall deliver to the Secretary of State any such adjusted or restated Annual Audited Accounts or Final Reviewed Accounts as soon as such accounts are available.

## 10. Business Plans

### 10.1 NOT USED

### 10.2 Annual Business Plans

- (a) Within twenty (20) Weekdays of the start of the first Reporting Period in each Franchisee Year, the Franchisee shall deliver to the Secretary of State the Franchisee's business plan for the forthcoming Franchisee Year (the "Annual Business Plan"). The Annual Business Plan shall be a detailed and comprehensive description of the Franchisee's planned activities for such Franchisee Year and the manner in which the Franchisee will meet its obligations under the Franchise Agreement in respect of that Franchisee Year, excluding in relation to the Shadow Operator Services, and include:

- (i) a revised profit and loss forecast, cash flow forecast and forecast balance sheet for each of the thirteen (13) Reporting Periods in each Franchisee Year during the Franchise Term;
- (ii)
  - (A) a forecast of the Franchisee's Forecast Closing Cash Position for the last day of each of the following thirteen (13) Reporting Periods; and
  - (B) statement demonstrating how the Franchisee intends to ensure that at the end of each of the following thirteen (13) Reporting Periods it will have an available Forecast Closing Cash Position which is not less than the Floor Cash Position;
- (iii) an annual improvement plan providing:
  - (A) details of any new technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals which could improve the provision of the Franchise Services, reduce the cost of providing the Franchise Services or enable the Franchise Services to be provided more efficiently;
  - (B) an analysis of the impact of any technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals that are proposed in relation to the Franchise Services, including analyses of the costs of and timescale for effecting such changes and the impact on the provision of the Franchise Services;
  - (C) details of those technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals which the Franchisee proposes to implement during that Franchisee Year; and
  - (D) an analysis of the technologies, processes, developments and/or proposals which the Franchisee implemented in the previous Franchisee Year including details of any cost reductions and/or efficiency gains arising from the same and a reconciliation to the annual improvement plan for the previous Franchisee Year; and
- (iv) a statement from each of, a statutory director of the Franchisee and, a statutory director of each Parent confirming that the Annual Business Plan has been provided to, considered and endorsed by the board of directors of that Parent and that the board of directors of that Parent is not aware of any other plan which may alter, vary or impact on the Business Plan and shall at any time during the following twelve (12) months notify the Secretary of State should any of them become aware of any such plan.
- (b) If at any time during a Franchisee Year the Franchisee produces any other annual business plan or periodic plan which is delivered to its Parents it shall at the same time as delivering such plan to its Parents notify the Secretary of State of all such plans and shall explain to the Secretary of State how (if at all) such further plan alters, amends or otherwise varies or impacts on the applicable Annual Business Plan or Initial Budget. The Secretary of State shall be entitled to copies of such further plans as the Secretary of State shall reasonably determine.

### 10.3 Business Action Plan

- (a) The Secretary of State may at any time require the Franchisee to produce a Business Action Plan in respect of any aspect of the Business Plan. Such Business Action Plan may include steps relating to:
  - (i) timetable and service pattern development;
  - (ii) Station facility improvement;
  - (iii) performance management improvement;
  - (iv) customer service improvement; and

- (v) improvements in the quality of service delivery or the efficiency of delivery of the Franchise Services.
- (b) The Franchisee shall comply with any guidance issued by the Secretary of State about how and with whom any consultation on the content of a Business Action Plan is to take place.
- (c) Any proposal in a Business Action Plan shall only be implemented if and to the extent that the Secretary of State decides it is appropriate to do so and subject to any conditions which the Secretary of State may impose.

## 11. Safety Information

### 11.1 Safety

- (a) The Franchisee shall co-operate with any request from any relevant competent authority for provision of information and/or preparation and submission of reports detailing or identifying compliance with safety obligations set out in the Safety Regulations including any breaches of the Safety Regulations.
- (b) The Franchisee shall notify the Secretary of State as soon as practicable of the receipt and contents of any formal notification relating to safety or any improvement or prohibition notice received from the ORR. Immediately upon receipt of such notification or notice, the Franchisee shall provide the Secretary of State with a copy of such notification or notice.
- (c) The Franchisee shall participate in industry groups and committees addressing the domestic and European safety agenda of the Railway Group.

## 12. Further Information

### 12.1 The Franchisee shall:

- (a) deliver to the Secretary of State, or procure the delivery to the Secretary of State of, such information, records or documents as the Secretary of State may request within such period as the Secretary of State may reasonably require and which relate to or are connected with the Franchisee's performance of the Franchise Agreement; and
- (b) procure that each Affiliate of the Franchisee complies with paragraph 12.1(a) in respect of any information, records or documents that relate to its dealings with the Franchisee in connection with the Franchisee's performance of its obligations under the Franchise Agreement.

### 12.2 The information referred to in paragraph 12.1 shall include:

- (a) any agreement, contract or arrangement to which the Franchisee is a party in connection with any rolling stock vehicles used in the operation of Passenger Services and/or Shadow Operator Services;
- (b) in so far as the Franchisee has or is able to obtain the same, any agreement contract or arrangement which may be associated with the procurement, leasing, financing or maintenance of any such rolling stock vehicles;
- (c) any agreement for or any documents associated with the manufacture or supply of any rolling stock vehicles; or
- (d) any arrangements for the securitisation of any lease granted in respect of such rolling stock vehicles.

### 12.3 The Secretary of State may require the Franchisee to provide:

- (a) the information required to be provided under this Schedule 11.2 more frequently than set out in this Schedule 11.2;

- (b) the information required to be provided under this Schedule 11.2, or, in the Secretary of State's discretion, more detailed financial information, at any time in connection with the re-letting of the Franchise; and
- (c) such unaudited accounts under such accounting policies as may be prescribed by the Secretary of State, acting reasonably, from time to time.

**13. Information from Third Parties**

- 13.1 The Franchisee shall, if the Secretary of State so requests, use all reasonable endeavours to ensure that the Secretary of State has direct access to any information, data or records relating to the Franchisee which is or are maintained by third parties and to which the Secretary of State is entitled to have access, or of which the Secretary of State is entitled to receive a copy under the Franchise Agreement.
- 13.2 The Franchisee shall, if the Secretary of State so requests, procure the provision by RSP to the Secretary of State of such information, data and records as the Franchisee is entitled to receive under the Ticketing and Settlement Agreement, in such form as the Secretary of State may specify from time to time.
- 13.3 The obligations of the Franchisee under this Schedule 11.2 to provide information to the Secretary of State shall not apply if the Secretary of State notifies the Franchisee that the Secretary of State has received the relevant information directly from any other person (including the relevant Infrastructure Manager or RSP). The Franchisee shall, if the Secretary of State so requests, confirm or validate any such information which is received from any such other person.
- 13.4 The Franchisee shall promptly advise the Secretary of State of any changes that are to be made to its systems or processes or the systems and processes of the RSP that will, in the reasonable opinion of the Franchisee, materially affect the continuity of any of the records that are provided pursuant to this Schedule 11.2. Any such advice shall include an assessment of the materiality of the relevant change.

**14. Compatibility of Information**

- 14.1 All financial, operational or other information, and any data and records required to be provided to the Secretary of State under the Franchise Agreement shall be provided, if so requested by the Secretary of State, in a form compatible with the Secretary of State's electronic data and records systems on the Start Date, as modified from time to time in accordance with paragraph 3 of Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation).
- 14.2 The Franchisee shall ensure that the interconnection of such systems or the provision of such information, data and records to the Secretary of State under the Franchise Agreement will not result in any infringement of any third party Intellectual Property Rights to which its systems or such information, data or records may be subject.

**15. Environmental Information**

**15.1 Environmental Information Data Collection Plan**

- (a) The Franchisee shall, by no later than three (3) months after the Start Date, provide a report to the Secretary of State setting out:
  - (i) which measures included in the Dataset the Franchisee is unable to provide, despite using reasonable endeavours to do so ("**Excluded Data**");
  - (ii) for each item of Excluded Data, the technical, operational or commercial reason why the Franchisee is unable to provide the Excluded Data; and
  - (iii) a plan ("**Environmental Data Collection Plan**") detailing, in relation to each item of Excluded Data, the actions which the Franchisee would need to take in order to be able to provide such Excluded Data, the Franchisee's best estimate of the cost of taking such action

and the date by which, if such actions were taken, the Franchisee would be able to begin providing such Excluded Data to the Secretary of State.

- (b) The Dataset, excluding any measures which the Secretary of State agrees, acting reasonably, that the Franchisee is, despite using reasonable endeavours, unable to provide, shall be referred to as the **"Initial Dataset"**.
- (c) The Secretary of State may require:
  - (i) the Franchisee to implement the Environmental Data Collection Plan in whole or in part; and/or
  - (ii) the Franchisee to take such other actions as, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, would enable the Franchisee to provide any item of Excluded Data,

following which the relevant item of Excluded Data will form part of the Initial Dataset.

- (d) Where the Franchisee is:
  - (i) undertaking works, whether at a Station or Depot or in respect of rolling stock;
  - (ii) procuring rolling stock; or
  - (iii) taking any other action which could enable the Franchisee to provide any items of Excluded Data in a cost effective manner,

the Franchisee shall use reasonable endeavours to do so in a manner which would enable the Franchisee to provide any relevant item of Excluded Data (and any item of Excluded Data which the Franchisee becomes able to provide as a result will, with effect from the date on which the Franchisee becomes able to provide the same, form part of the Initial Dataset).

- (e) With effect from the date that is 3 months after the Start Date, the Franchisee shall measure and collect and provide to the Secretary of State in accordance with this paragraph 15, that data included in the Initial Dataset so as to allow the Secretary of State and the Franchisee to understand the current environmental performance of the Franchise and any potential for improvement in terms of environmental impact.
- (f) The Franchisee may, in its discretion, measure and collect additional data provided that the minimum required under the Initial Dataset is adhered to and the Franchisee shall co-operate with the Secretary of State to seek to identify improvements in the efficiency and/or cost effectiveness of the collection of the data in the Dataset.
- (g) The Franchisee shall ensure that the form of measurement of the Initial Dataset enables it to report a consolidated periodic or annual usage figure to the Secretary of State as specified for each measure in paragraph 1 of Appendix 1 (Environmental Information) to this Schedule 11.2.

#### 15.2 Environmental Impact Monitoring Report and Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit

- (a) The Franchisee shall submit to the Secretary of State a report setting out the result of the data collection of the Initial Dataset required by this paragraph 15 in accordance with the applicable granularity and regularity specified in paragraph 1 of Appendix 1 (Environmental Information) to this Schedule 11.2 (the **"Environmental Impact Monitoring Report"**) within three (3) months following the end of each Franchisee Year.
- (b) The Franchisee shall procure a suitably qualified independent body (such independent body to be appointed only with the prior written approval of the Secretary of State) to undertake an annual independent written audit of the data provided in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report and

the collection methodology of the Initial Dataset in respect of each Franchisee Year (the “**Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit**”).

- (c) The Franchisee shall procure that the independent body appointed pursuant to paragraph 15.2(b) includes in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit:
  - (i) a retrospective assessment (covering the Franchisee Year to which the audit relates) of the Franchisee’s data collection methodology and level of data granularity carried out in accordance with this paragraph 15.2 and any recommendations by the independent body in respect of such methodology;
  - (ii) a verification of the accuracy of past data submissions made in respect of the Initial Dataset and as summarised in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report; and
  - (iii) an assessment of the Franchisee’s proposed data collection methodology and level of data granularity for the following Franchisee Year’s data collection, and

where the independent body has identified as part of its audit any errors, discrepancies or concerns with any of the items described in paragraphs 15.2(c)(i) to (iii) above, whether these are, in the reasonable opinion of the independent body undertaking the audit, material or minor errors, discrepancies or concerns.

- (d) The Franchisee shall submit a copy of the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit to the Secretary of State at the same time as the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report is submitted in accordance with paragraph 15.2(a) above.
- (e) Where the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit highlights errors, discrepancies or concerns with any of the items described in paragraphs 15.2(c)(i) to (iii) above, the Franchisee shall,:
  - (i) **in the case of minor errors, discrepancies or concerns which are capable of rectification without material additional expenditure** - rectify such minor errors, discrepancies or concerns and resubmit the relevant Environmental Impact Monitoring Report updated to address these to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable, and in any event within ten (10) Weekdays, following the date of the submission of the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit to the Secretary of State so that there is a complete and accurate record of the data in question;
  - (ii) **in the case of material errors, discrepancies or concerns which are capable of rectification** - rectify such material errors, discrepancies or concerns and resubmit the relevant Environmental Impact Monitoring Report updated to address these to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable, and in any event within ten (10) Weekdays, following the date of submission of the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit to the Secretary of State so that there is a complete and accurate record of the data in question; and
  - (iii) **in the case of concerns in relation to the Franchisee’s data collection methodology and level of data granularity for the forthcoming Franchisee Year’s data collection** – make such amendments to such methodology as recommended in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit so as to address those concerns.

**16. Environmental Impact Targets**

**16.1 Environmental Impact Targets set by the Secretary of State**

The Secretary of State sets out in paragraph 2 of Appendix 1 (Environmental Information) of this Schedule 11.2 the targets for improving the environmental performance of the Franchise (the “**Environmental Impact Targets**”), and the Franchisee shall meet such Environmental Impact Targets during the ICWC Period.

## 16.2 Performance against the Environmental Impact Targets

- (a) For each Franchisee Year the Secretary of State shall determine the Franchisee's performance against each Environmental Impact Target on an annual basis (within two (2) Reporting Periods of receipt of the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report) by comparing:
- (i) **for traction carbon emissions:** the Franchisee's performance set out in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report (as updated following the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit) against the relevant Environmental Impact Target for the relevant Franchisee Year, in accordance with the annual trajectory specified in the Sustainable Development Strategy;
  - (ii) **for non-traction energy use:** the Franchisee's performance as set out in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report (as updated following the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit) against the relevant Environmental Impact Targets;
  - (iii) **for waste:** the Franchisee's performance as set out in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report (as updated following the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit) against the relevant Environmental Impact Targets;
  - (iv) **for mains water:** for the second (2nd) Franchisee Year, the number of automatic water meters installed against the total number of water meters. These details shall be reported by the Franchisee within three (3) months of the end of the second (2nd) Franchisee Year. For subsequent Franchisee Years, the Franchisee's performance as set out in the Environmental Impact Monitoring Report (as updated following the Environmental Impact Monitoring Audit) against the relevant Environmental Impact Targets.
- (b) For the purposes of undertaking the comparison pursuant to paragraph 16.2(a), the results referred to in paragraphs 16.2(a)(i) to (iii) (as the case may be) shall be rounded up to one (1) decimal place with the midpoint (that is, 4.45) rounded upwards (that is, 4.5).
- (c) As soon as reasonably practicable following the Start Date and in any event within six (6) months of the Start Date, the Franchisee shall produce and provide to the Secretary of State for approval an implementation plan for the duration of the ICWC Period which is capable of achieving each of the Environmental Impact Targets each Franchisee Year (as such implementation plan may be revised in accordance with paragraph 16.3 (the "**Environmental Impact Targets Plan**")).
- (d) Following the Secretary of State's approval, the Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement the Environmental Impact Targets Plan (including any such plan which is revised in accordance with paragraph 16.2(e)) in order to achieve the Environmental Impact Targets.
- (e) Notwithstanding the requirements of this paragraph 16.2, the Franchisee shall review its then current Environmental Impact Targets Plan and revise such plan as necessary by the end of the fifth (5th) Franchisee Year to ensure that such plan, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, is capable of achieving each Environmental Impact Target in each Franchisee Year.

## 16.3 Remedial Actions

- (a) In the event that an Environmental Impact Target is not met in any Franchisee Year, the Franchisee shall as soon as reasonably practicable produce and provide to the Secretary of State a revised Environmental Impact Targets Plan which, in the reasonable opinion of the Secretary of State, is capable of achieving the Environmental Impact Targets.
- (b) The Franchisee shall use all reasonable endeavours to implement the revised Environmental Impact Targets Plan, which shall be the Environmental Impact Targets Plan for the purposes of the Franchise Agreement.

16.4 **Publication**

The Franchisee shall publish (in such format as the Secretary of State may reasonably require) details of its performance against the Environmental Impact Targets in widely accessible forms including, as a minimum, publishing them on its website and in each Customer Report.

Withdrawn March 2024

APPENDIX 1 TO SCHEDULE 11.2A

Environmental Information

1. Environmental Impact Monitoring Dataset

Table 1			
Subject	Unit	Granularity	Regularity
TRACTION	EC4T (kWh)	Breakdown per distinct fleet - metered	Four (4) week period
	EC4T (kWh)	Breakdown per distinct fleet - unmetered	Four (4) week period
	Gas-oil (litres)	Breakdown per distinct fleet	Four (4) week period
NONTRACTION	Electricity (kWh)	Total	Four (4) week period or monthly
	Gas (kWh)	Total	Four (4) week period or monthly
	Gas-oil (litres)	Total	Four (4) week period or monthly
CARBON	Scope 1 emissions (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Scope 2 emissions (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Embodied carbon in new infrastructure projects over the amount set out in paragraph 10.3 (b) (Sustainable Construction) of Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation)	Total	Per project
WATER	Mains Water consumption (m <sup>3</sup> )	Total	Annual
	Water recycling initiatives	Narrative	Annual
WASTE	Waste generated (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Waste recycled (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Waste subject to other recovery (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Waste to landfill (tonnes)	Total	Annual
	Hazardous waste	Total	Annual

Table 1			
Subject	Unit	Granularity	Regularity
ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (EMS)	Enforcement/information Notices	Total	Annual
	Environmental fines or prosecutions	Total	Annual
	Environmental incidents reported through the EMS	Total	Annual
	Environmental training records % personnel briefed/trained	Total	Annual

Withdrawn March 2024

2. Environmental Impact Targets

Table 2			
Traction Carbon Emissions	Non-Traction Energy Use	Waste	Mains Water
<p>A reduction of 61% in kg CO<sub>2</sub>E per vehicle km against the 0.57g/CO<sub>2</sub>E per vehicle km over the period from the Start Date to 31 March 2026, such reduction to be achieved in accordance with the Sustainable Development Strategy referred to in paragraph 10.2 (Sustainable Development Strategy) of Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), which will contain a target for each Franchisee Year for this purpose.</p>	<p>1. By 31 March 2026, an overall reduction in kilowatt hours (kWh) of an amount expressed as a percentage equal to <b>(A) + (B) + (C)</b> (calculated in accordance with paragraph 2 below), against the 2016/17 baseline figure of 21,576,193 kWh (the “<b>Overall kWh Reduction</b>”).</p> <p>2. For the purposes of paragraph 1 of Table 2, the references to <b>(A)</b>, <b>(B)</b> and <b>(C)</b> shall have the meanings given to them below:</p> <p>(A) means an amount equal to the product of:</p> <p>(i) the total number of Franchisee Years comprised in the Franchise Term which are of thirteen (13) Reporting Periods in duration; and</p> <p>(ii) 3.115%;</p> <p>(B) means, if the first Franchisee Year is of less than thirteen (13) Reporting Periods in duration, an amount expressed as a percentage in relation to that Franchisee Year which is derived by the application of the following formula:</p> <p><b>3.115 x (FY/13)</b></p> <p>where:</p> <p><b>FY</b> means the number of Reporting Periods in the first Franchisee Year during the Franchise Term; and</p> <p>(C) means, if the Final Franchisee Year is of less than thirteen (13) Reporting Periods in duration, an amount expressed as a percentage in relation to that Franchisee Year which is derived by the application of the following formula:</p> <p><b>3.115 x (FY/13)</b></p> <p>where:</p> <p><b>FY</b> means the number of Reporting Periods in the Final Franchisee Year during the Franchise Term.</p> <p>3. By 1 April 2023, a reduction in kWh of an amount equal to not less than fifty per cent (50%) of the Overall kWh Reduction.</p>	<p>From the end of the second Franchisee Year, the Franchisee must send zero waste to landfill and must recycle or prepare for re-use, ninety per cent (90%) of waste (by weight) per Franchisee Year.</p>	<p>By the end of the first Franchisee Year, the Franchisee must install automatic meter readings (AMR) for all water meters, where practicable. The Franchisee shall determine a baseline of water consumption by the end of the second Franchisee Year, such baseline to be agreed with the Secretary of State. The Franchisee shall develop a target to reduce water consumption against the agreed baseline referred to above by the end of the third Franchisee Year, such target to be agreed with the Secretary of State and be not less than a 20% reduction against the agreed baseline by 31 March 2026.</p>

Table 2			
Traction Carbon Emissions	Non-Traction Energy Use	Waste	Mains Water
	4. By 1 October 2024, a reduction in kWh of an amount equal to not less than seventy five per cent (75%) of the Overall kWh Reduction.		

Withdrawn March 2024

APPENDIX 2 TO SCHEDULE 11.2A

Operational Performance Information

1. Information about the operational performance of the Franchisee

1.1 The Franchisee shall at all times during the Franchise Term maintain records in relation to its operational performance under the Franchise Agreement, covering the areas and the information described in this Appendix 2. Such information shall include details as to whether or not any curtailment, diversion, delay or failure to attain any connection is attributable, in the Franchisee’s opinion, to either a Force Majeure Event or the implementation of a Service Recovery Plan.

1.2 The Franchisee shall, subject to paragraph 1.3, provide to the Secretary of State the information set out in the following tables at the frequency specified in the Column of each such table headed “When information to be provided”.

1.3 When so requested by the Secretary of State, the Franchisee shall, within such reasonable period as the Secretary of State may specify, make such information available for review by the Secretary of State by reference to:

- (a) such level of disaggregation (including by Route or Service Group) as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State; and
- (b) any particular day, week or other longer period as is reasonably specified by the Secretary of State.

1.4 The following key shall apply to the table in this Appendix 2:

<b>A =</b>	Information to be provided on or before any Passenger Change Date;
<b>B =</b>	Information to be provided for every Reporting Period within ten (10) Weekdays of the last day of each Reporting Period; and
<b>C =</b>	Information to be provided annually within ten (10) Weekdays of the last day of each Franchisee Year.

1.5 This Appendix 2 shall be interpreted in accordance with any guidance issued by the Secretary of State from time to time for that purpose.

Table 1 - Operational Performance Information		
Information to be provided	Information (format)	When information to be provided
<b>Number of Passenger Services</b>		
Number of Passenger Services in the Timetable.	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day.	[number]	B
<b>Number of Cancellations and Partial Cancellations</b>		
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Cancellation.	[number]	B

Table 1 - Operational Performance Information		
Information to be provided	Information (format)	When information to be provided
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Partial Cancellation.	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Cancellation attributable to the Franchisee's implementation of a Service Recovery Plan.	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Partial Cancellation attributable to the Franchisee's implementation of a Service Recovery Plan.	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Network Rail Cancellation.	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Network Rail Partial Cancellation.	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Disputed Cancellation.	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a Disputed Partial Cancellation.	[number]	B
Number of Disputed Cancellations and Disputed Partial Cancellations for the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which the attribution remains in dispute between Network Rail and the Franchisee.	[number]	B
Number of Disputed Cancellations and Disputed Partial Cancellations from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which disputed attribution has been resolved or determined since the Franchisee's previous report including whether each relevant Disputed Cancellation and/or Disputed Partial Cancellation was attributed to Network Rail or to the Franchisee.	[number]	B
Where there is a difference between the Timetable and the Plan of the Day on any day the following:  (a) the fact of such difference; and  (b) the number of:  (i) Passenger Services affected; and  (ii) Cancellations or Partial Cancellations which would have arisen if the Timetable on that day had been the same as the Plan of the Day.	[number]	B

Table 1 - Operational Performance Information		
Information to be provided	Information (format)	When information to be provided
Where there is a difference between the Plan of the Day and the Enforcement Plan of the Day on any day:  (a) the fact of such difference;  (b) the number of:  (i) Passenger Services affected; and  (ii) Cancellations or Partial Cancellations which would have arisen if the Plan of the Day had been the same as the Enforcement Plan of the Day.	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a cancellation and which satisfied the conditions of the term Cancellation, except that such cancellations occurred for reasons attributable to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event.	[number]	B
Number of Passenger Services in the Enforcement Plan of the Day which were the subject of a partial cancellation and which satisfied the conditions of the term Partial Cancellation, except that such partial cancellations occurred for reasons attributable to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event.	[number]	B
<b>Minutes Delay</b>		
Number of Minutes Delay attributable to the Franchisee.	[minutes]	B
Number of Minutes Delay attributable to Network Rail.	[minutes]	B
Number of Minutes Delay attributable to any other Train Operator.	[minutes]	B
Number of Minutes Delay for such Reporting Period for which the attribution is in dispute between Network Rail and the Franchisee.	[minutes]	B
Number of Minutes Delay for the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which the attribution remains in dispute between Network Rail and the Franchisee.	[minutes]	B
Number of Minutes Delay from the twelve (12) preceding Reporting Periods for which disputed attribution has been resolved or determined since the Franchisee's previous report and the number of such Minutes Delay attributed to each of the Franchisee and Network Rail as a result of such resolution or determination.	[minutes]	B

Table 1 - Operational Performance Information		
Information to be provided	Information (format)	When information to be provided
Number of Minutes Delay attributed to the occurrence of a Force Majeure Event.	[minutes]	B
<b>T-3, T-15 and On Time</b>		
Time to 3 Minutes percentage published by Network Rail, rounded to one (1) decimal place;	[number]	B
Time to 15 Minutes percentage published by Network Rail, rounded to one (1) decimal place;	[number]	B
On Time percentage published by Network Rail, rounded to one (1) decimal place;	[number]	B
<b>Train Mileage</b>		
Planned Train Mileage	[mileage]	A
Actual Train Mileage	[mileage]	B

Withdrawn March 2024

## APPENDIX 3 TO SCHEDULE 11.2A

## Summary of Reporting and Other Requirements

This Appendix contains a non-exhaustive summary of the obligations on the Franchisee throughout this Agreement in respect of the provision of information to the Secretary of State which are not set out in this Schedule 11.2. This summary is for guidance only. If there are any inconsistencies with the other contents of the Schedules mentioned below (including any Appendix), those other contents shall apply.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development), paragraph 11.3(a) (Consultation on Significant Alterations to the Timetable)	Requirement for Franchisee to provide a comprehensive summary of the proposed changes from the Timetable then in force.
Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development), paragraphs 11.3(e) and 11.3(f) (Consultation on Significant Alterations to the Timetable)	Requirement for Franchisee to publish a report containing a summary of the main issues raised by respondents to the consultation.
Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development), paragraph 13.1 (Certification and Notification by Franchisee of Exercising Timetable Development Rights)	Requirement for Franchisee to provide a certificate addressed to the Secretary of State signed by a statutory director in respect of the exercise of timetable development rights.
Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development), paragraph 13.3(a) (Certification and Notification by Franchisee of Exercising Timetable Development Rights)	Requirement for Franchisee to provide copies to the Secretary of State of correspondence in respect of discussions with Network Rail.
Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development), paragraph 14.4 (Finalising the Train Plan)	Requirement for Franchisee to provide the Train Plan certified as true and accurate by a statutory director.
Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development), paragraph 15.1 (Capacity Mitigation Proposal)	Requirement for Franchisee to provide a Capacity Mitigation Proposal if required by the Secretary of State.
Schedule 1.1 (Franchise Services and Service Development), paragraph 16.1 (New or amended Train Service Requirement by Secretary of State and Franchisee's Informed Opinion)	Requirement for Franchisee to provide informed opinion in respect of a new or amended Train Service Requirement.
Schedule 1.2 (Operating Obligations), paragraph 7.7	Provide evidence to the Secretary of State of the steps taken under Paragraph 7 (Obligation to use all reasonable endeavours under this Schedule 1.2).
Schedule 1.4 (Passenger Facing Obligations), paragraph 8 (Publication of Performance Data)	Requirements to publish performance data.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Schedule 1.4 (Passenger Facing Obligations), paragraph 9 (Publication of Complaints and Faults Handling Data)	Requirements to publish complaints and fault handling data.
Schedule 1.5 (Information about Passengers), paragraph 1 (Passenger Numbers Information)	Requirement to provide Secretary of State information about the use by passengers of the Passenger Services.
Schedule 1.5 (Information about Passengers) Paragraph 5.3 (Yield Management Data)	Requirement to notify the Secretary of State in writing of the full names and registered office addresses of the entities which from time to time are hosting or storing any of the Yield Management Data together with the location(s) in which the Yield Management Data is hosted, stored or otherwise held. In cases where the storage, hosting and/or other processing location(s) are outside of the United Kingdom the notification shall include details of the relevant country(ies) or territory(ies).
Schedule 1.7 (Stations), paragraph 7 (Information about Station Improvement Measures)	Requirement to maintain and provide records regarding Station improvement measures and measures taken to improve Station environments.
Schedule 2.2 (Security of Access Agreements, Rolling Stock Leases, Station and Depot Leases), paragraph 2.2 (Rolling Stock Related Contracts and Insurance Arrangements)	Obligation to provide a copy of all draft Rolling Stock Related Contracts and all executed Rolling Stock Related Contracts and any agreements amending the Rolling Stock Related Contracts including such other information as required by the Secretary of State together with a justification of the Franchisee's proposed rolling stock maintenance strategy and provision of analysis of whole life costs.
Schedule 2.2 (Security of Access Agreements, Rolling Stock Leases, Station and Depot Leases), paragraph 3.9(b) (Cascaded Rolling Stock and Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan)	Requirement to produce a Delayed Cascade Mitigation Plan.
Schedule 2.5 (Transport, Travel and Other Schemes), paragraph 1.5 (Local Authority Concessionary Travel Schemes)	Requirement to provide information about Local Authority Concessionary Travel Schemes.
Schedule 2.5 (Transport, Travel and Other Schemes), paragraph 2.6 (Multi-Modal Fares Schemes)	Requirement to provide information about multi-modal fares schemes.
Schedule 2.5 (Transport, Travel and Other Schemes), paragraph 3.3 (Discount Fares Schemes)	Requirement to provide information about Discount Fares Schemes.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Schedule 2.5 (Transport, Travel and Other Schemes), paragraph 4.4 (Inter-Operator Schemes)	Requirement to provide information about Inter-Operator Schemes.
Schedule 4 (Accessibility and Inclusivity), paragraph 4 (Specific additional obligations relating to persons with disabilities)	Recording of obligations relating to persons with disabilities.
Schedule 5.8 (Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring), paragraph 1 (Information)	Requirement to provide a summary of the Prices of Commuter Fares and Protected Fares to the Secretary of State no later than week twelve (12) of each Fares Setting Round.
Schedule 5.8 (Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring), paragraph 2.1 (Monitoring)	Requirement to provide information relating to the Prices of Commuter Fares and Protected Fares to the Secretary of State and information relating to the Gross Revenue of the Franchisee in relation to the any particular Fare or Fares or any particular period.
Schedule 5.8 (Fares Regulation Information and Monitoring), paragraph 2.2 (Monitoring)	Requirement to provide written confirmation to the Secretary of State from a statutory director whether the Franchisee has complied with the obligations under Schedule 5 (Fares and Smart Ticketing) during each Fares Setting Round.
Schedule 6.1 (Franchise Specific Obligations), paragraph 9.5 (Infrastructure Projects)	Requirement to provide reports describing progress in relation to matters relating to each Infrastructure Project.
Schedule 6.1 (Franchise Specific Obligations), paragraph 2.1 (Boxing Day Services)	Requirement to provide reports setting out proposals for operation of Additional Boxing Day Services.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 1.1 (Establishing a Business Structure for the Franchise)	Requirement to provide details of governance framework if required by the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 8.1 (Provision of Skilled and Experienced Resources)	Requirement to share the outputs of the resources forum chaired by the HR director if required by the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 8.2(b) (Provision of Skilled and Experienced Resources)	Requirement to provide the output and recommendations of the skills audit that details how the Franchisee intends to address any skills gap identified to the Secretary of State within three (3) months of the conclusion of the skills audit undertaken in accordance with paragraph 8.2(a) of Schedule 6.2.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 8.5 (Provision of Skilled and Experienced Resources)	Requirement to provide a copy of the High Speed Skills Strategy and a report against progress in implementing that strategy if required by the Secretary of State.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 9.3 (Financial Management)	Requirement to report results of, and any agreed action plans arising from, the Financial Management Maturity Assessment to both the Shadow Operator Programme Board and the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 10.2 (Train Crew Planning and Management)	Requirement to provide a comprehensive train crew resource plan which looks forward no less than one (1) year in respect of train managers and no less than two (2) years in respect of train drivers if required by the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 10.5 (Train Crew Planning and Management)	Requirement to report on the performance, effectiveness and benefits from the use of train crew resource planning tools, including how they support the interfaces with HS2 Limited, if required by the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 10.6 (Train Crew Planning and Management)	Requirement to review and report on the train crew planning and management matters detailed in paragraphs 10.6(a) to (g) of Schedule 6.2A within three (3) months of the Start Date and to work with the Secretary of State to agree appropriate key performance indicators within six (6) months of the Start Date and to provide quarterly reports against such agreed key performance indicators.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 17.2 (Engagement with Franchise Staff)	Requirement to report on the outcomes of actions arising from workshops held to canvass Franchise Staff opinion on the Franchisee's decision making processes and change plans, if required by the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 18.2(b) (Training, Developing and Supporting Customer-Facing Staff)	Requirement to report findings from a trial of twenty (20) virtual reality headsets during induction training and to confirm the next steps within nine (9) months of the conclusion of the trial, such trial to be implemented within eighteen (18) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 20.4 (Franchise Employee Working Arrangements and Inclusion)	Requirement to report on the results of flexible working trials conducted in accordance with paragraph 20.3(c) of Schedule 6.2A along with recommendations regarding how flexible working arrangements could be implemented during the ICWC Period, the Integrated Operator Period and/or in the delivery of Shadow Operator Services within three (3) months of completing the trial, such trials to be undertaken within twenty four (24) months of the Start Date.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 25.6 (Security)	Requirement to provide annual reports to the Secretary of State on crime prevention measures and security related projects relating to Stations, other relevant locations and/or the Franchise Services.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 31.3 (Station Investment)	Requirement to share promptly with the Secretary of State, HS2 Limited, the British Transport Police and RSSB, the results of a trial of CCTV analytics at Birmingham International Station that is to be undertaken within twenty four (24) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 31.13 (Station Investment)	Requirement to share a report with the Secretary of State and HS2 Limited on the technical feasibility and potential business cases for the implementation of digital wayfinding following a trial conducted at Birmingham International within six (6) months of the completion of the trial, such trial to be undertaken within twelve (12) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 31.15 (Station Investment)	Requirement to present the results of a feasibility study relating to residential schemes at each Station describing how the Franchisee could participate in the delivery of the schemes to the Secretary of State and Network Rail within six (6) months of the completion of the study, such study to be undertaken within eighteen (18) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 31.17 (Station Investment)	Requirement to promptly provide a copy of its latest station partnership plan if required by the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 32.5(b) (Line Speed Project)	Requirement to promptly provide the Secretary of State with a copy of the Line Speed Strategy and the Line Speed Implementation Plan (and each update) within five (5) Weekdays after the date each is agreed with Network Rail.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 32.5(d) (Line Speed Project)	Requirement to provide the Secretary of State with a quarterly report on the implementation of the Line Speed Strategy and Line Speed Implementation Plan, including: (i) progress made against the timeframes, milestones and expenditure; and (ii) areas of concern and risks identified by the Franchisee and/or Network Rail and details of suggested mitigation strategies.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 33.1 (Assurance Review)	Requirement to provide the Assurance Review taking into account the outputs from the Event Steering Group and reporting on the capability of the Franchisee to deliver TSR3 from the

Reference	Summary of Obligation
	planned date of its introduction to the Secretary of State no later than fifty five (55) weeks before the introduction of TSR3.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 47.1 (Measuring, Monitoring and Improving Community Impact)	Requirement to report findings from and the results of independent assessments measuring the community impact of the Franchise as part of the Community Rail Report within twelve (12) months of the Start Date and in each subsequent Franchisee Year.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 49.2 (Sustainable Innovation)	Requirement to share the findings of a study into the potential for using non-diesel self-powered trains in the Franchise with the Secretary of State within three (3) months of the conclusion of the study, such study to take place within twelve (12) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 51.2 (Dissemination and Sharing of Innovative Approaches)	Requirement to submit the Stakeholder Innovation Plan in relation to high speed innovations (agreed with HS2 Limited) for approval within twelve (12) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 51.4 (Dissemination and Sharing of Innovative Approaches)	Requirement to submit an updated Stakeholder Innovation Plan for approval within one (1) month of the commencement of each subsequent Franchisee Year.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 52.1 (Stakeholder Events)	Requirement to submit a Stakeholder Events Plan to the Secretary of State detailing the Franchisee's plans and proposed invitees for the forums and conferences detailed in paragraphs 52.4 to 52.6 of Schedule 6.2A within twelve (12) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 52.3 (Stakeholder Events)	Requirement to submit an updated Stakeholder Events Plan for approval within one (1) month of the commencement of each subsequent Franchisee Year.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 53.3 (HS2 Project: Taking Passenger and Stakeholder Needs into Account)	Requirement to report the findings and results of each piece of research conducted by Transport Focus in accordance with paragraph 53.2 of Schedule 6.2A to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 55.10 (Alliance Joint Tasks)	Requirement to submit a minor infrastructure enhancement plan (agreed with Network Rail) detailing the Franchisee's proposed expenditure under paragraph 55.13 of Schedule 6.2A to the Secretary of State for approval within twelve (12) months of the Start Date.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 55.12 (Alliance Joint Tasks)	Requirement to submit an updated minor infrastructure plan (agreed with Network Rail) to the Secretary of State for approval within one (1) month of the commencement of each subsequent Franchisee Year.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 55.14 (Alliance Joint Tasks)	Requirement to provide a report detailing the tracked expenditure for the current and all previous Franchisee Years and the proposed expenditure for the subsequent Franchisee Year in relation to each Alliance Joint Task within the report provided to the Secretary of State in accordance with paragraph 4.1 of Schedule 6.4 (Alliances).
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 56.1 (Services Through Planned Works)	Requirement to submit a Route Diversionary Implementation Plan for the HS2 Project and other major rail enhancement projects relevant to the Franchise Services to the Secretary of State for approval within six (6) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 56.3 (Services Through Planned Works)	Requirement to submit an updated Route Diversionary Implementation Plan to the Secretary of State for approval within one (1) month of the commencement of each subsequent Franchisee Year.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 59.1 (Train Presentation)	Requirement to share the new Train Presentation Performance Regime if required by the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 63.2(c) (Operating Procedures)	Requirement to provide the A for B Plan if required by the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 66.1 (Data Collection, Storage and Management)	Requirement to share the data stored in the performance data collection and warehousing system with Network Rail and, if so required, with the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 66.2 (Data Collection, Storage and Management)	Requirement to provide a secure on-line library to store working and signed-off versions of all programme products and ensure that the Secretary of State, HS2 Limited and Network Rail have access to the relevant parts of the Programme Library throughout the remainder of the Franchise Period.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 67.1(c) (C-DAS)	Requirement to share the findings of the C-DAS trials carried out in accordance with paragraph 67.1(b) with the Secretary of State, the National Task Force Operations Group and other

Reference	Summary of Obligation
	relevant industry forums and bodies within thirty (30) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 69.1 (Possession Analysis)	Requirement to share any relevant historical and trending passenger loading information together with a measure of train costs and revenue for services affected by disruption to Network Rail and, if so required, to the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 71.2 (Annual Planning Conference)	Requirement to invite the Secretary of State and other relevant stakeholders to the Annual Planning Conference and provide feedback to the Secretary of State on any outputs agreed at such conference as soon as reasonably practicable.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 73.1 (IOC Preparation – Strategic Review)	Requirement to provide a copy of the strategic review of the Franchise in preparation for the Integrated Operator Period if required by the Secretary of State.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 73.2 (IOC Preparation – Strategic Review)	Requirement to submit a Strategic Business Change Plan to the Secretary of State for approval by 31 December 2023.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 73.4 (IOC Preparation – Strategic Review)	Requirement to submit an updated Strategic Business Change Plan for approval within one (1) month of the commencement of each subsequent Franchisee Year.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 74.3 (Institute for High Speed Rail)	Requirement to submit the High Speed Rail Institute Engagement Plan to the Secretary of State for approval within twelve (12) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 74.5 (Institute for High Speed Rail)	Ability to propose any amendments to the High Speed Rail Institute Engagement Plan to the Secretary of State for approval from time to time.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 75.4 (Customer Assistance During Planned Disruptions)	Requirement to submit a Planned Works Mitigation Plan to the Secretary of State for approval.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 75.5 (Customer Assistance During Planned Disruptions)	Requirement to submit an updated Planned Works Mitigation Plan to the Secretary of State for approval within one (1) month of the commencement of each subsequent Franchisee Year.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 77.2(a) (Innovative On-Board Services)	Requirement to agree a set of relevant key performance indicators relating to the innovative on-board services specified in paragraphs 77.2(c) to 77.2(f) of Schedule 6.2A

Reference	Summary of Obligation
	with the Secretary of State within twelve (12) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 77.3 (Innovative On-Board Services)	Requirement to report the results of trials of the innovative on-board services specified in paragraphs 77.2(c) to 77.2(f) of Schedule 6.2A against the relevant key performance indicators and report which of the services the Franchisee intends to provide to the Secretary of State within three (3) months from the conclusion of each trial.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 79.4 (Passenger Contact and Feedback)	Requirement to provide a quarterly report to the Secretary of State on the passenger feedback information received by the Franchisee in accordance with paragraph 79.3 of Schedule 6.2.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 81.5(a) (Transforming Accessibility)	Requirement to provide the results of the trial of a remote chaperone system to the Secretary of State within thirty six (36) months of the Start Date.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 82.1(c) (Passenger Satisfaction Monitoring)	Requirement to report the results of each passenger satisfaction monitor survey to the Secretary of State every Reporting Period.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 85.1 (Marketing)	Requirement to submit a marketing plan which takes into account the Integrated Services Marketing Plan, covers the remainder of the ICWC Period, details the Franchisee's proposals for the Total Marketing Spend and reports on the Franchisee's actual incurred expenditure out of the Total Marketing Spend to date to the Secretary of State for approval within eighteen (18) months of the Start Date and subsequently on an annual basis thereafter alongside the Annual Business Plan.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 85.2 (Marketing)	Requirement to submit a marketing partnership plan detailing how the Franchisee intends to promote economic growth and stimulate modal shift to the Secretary of States within eighteen (18) months of the Start Date and subsequently on an annual basis thereafter alongside the Annual Business Plan.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 86.1(i) (Total Marketing Spend)	Requirement to submit proof of all incurred expenditure out of the Total Marketing Spend for the relevant Franchisee Year to the Secretary of State within four (4) Reporting Periods of the end of each Franchisee Year.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 87.4 (Branding)	Requirement to grant (and ensure that each of its contractors or sub-contractors grants) to the Secretary of State a non-exclusive, worldwide, perpetual, irrevocable, royalty-free, fully paid up licence (with the right to grant sub-licences) to use WCP Brand IP to the extent necessary for the purpose of enabling the Secretary of State to receive and obtain the benefit of the Franchise Services.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 87.5 (Branding)	Requirement to notify the Secretary of State of an actual or suspected infringement of third party Intellectual Property Rights by the Franchisee or its agents or infringement by a third party of the Intellectual Property Rights in the WCP Brand IP in connection with the performance of the Franchise Services as soon as reasonably practicable and in writing.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 87.6 (Branding)	Requirement to inform the Secretary of State within fourteen (14) calendar days of an Infringement Claim being issued if the Franchisee decides to defend an Infringement Claim brought by a third party, or to bring an Infringement Claim against a third party.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 87.8 (Branding)	Requirement to provide reasonable assistance if required by the Secretary of State for the purpose of investigating and dealing with an Infringement Claim over which the Secretary of State has assumed control.
Part 1 to Schedule 6.2A (Committed Obligations), paragraph 95.7 (ITSO, Smart Ticketing and E-Tickets)	Requirement to jointly review the target percentages specified in paragraph 95.6 with the Secretary of State upon achieving such targets and agree higher targets with the Secretary of State.
Part 2 to Schedule 6.2A (Special Terms related to Committed Obligations), paragraph 5 (Review of Compliance)	Requirement to provide such evidence of compliance with Committed Obligations as the Secretary of State may request.
Schedule 7.1 (Operational Performance), paragraph 2 (Reporting Requirements)	Reporting requirements relating to the operational performance information set out in Appendix 2 (Operational Performance Information) of Schedule 11.2 (Management Information).
Schedule 7.1 (Operational Performance), paragraph 17 (Service Recovery Plans and Force Majeure)	Requirement to provide comprehensive records relating to the implementation of a Service Recovery Plan.
Schedule 7.1 (Operational Performance), paragraph 26.2 (Action Plans)	Requirement to produce an Action Plan to secure a Required Performance Improvement.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement), paragraph 5 (Required Improvement and NRPS Action Plans)	Requirement to produce a NRPS Action Plan to secure any Required Improvement for submission to the Secretary of State.
Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement), paragraph 9 (Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy)	Requirement to provide to the Secretary of State any proposed revisions to the Customer and Stakeholder Engagement Strategy.
Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement), paragraph 10 (Customer Report)	Requirement to produce and publish a Customer Report.
Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement), paragraph 11 (CCI Scheme)	Requirement to provide details of any CCI Scheme proposed by the Franchisee.
Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement), paragraph 12.1 (Customer Service and Satisfaction Data)	Requirement to publish details of the Franchisee's level of adherence to scheduled ticket office opening hours and performance in respect of Passenger Assistance service.
Schedule 7.2 (Customer Experience and Engagement), paragraphs 12.2 and 12.3 (Customer Service and Satisfaction Data)	Requirement to publish NRPS scores achieved by the Franchisee.
Schedule 8.2A (Profit Share Mechanism), paragraph 2 (Relevant Profit Report)	Reporting requirements relating to Relevant Profit Reports.
Schedule 9.1A (Financial and Other Consequences of Change), paragraph 11 (Information)	Requirement to provide information in respect of obligations under Schedule 9.1A as the Secretary of State may request.
Schedule 9.2A (Identity of ICWC Financial Model (Escrow Documents)), paragraph 1 (Franchisee's Obligations)	Requirement to provide the ICWC Financial Model and the Escrow Documents.
Schedule 10.1 (Procedure for Remediating a Contravention of the Franchise Agreement), paragraphs 3 (Remedial Plan Notices) and 4 (Remedial Plans)	Obligation to provide certain information in a Remedial Plan Notices/Remedial Plans.
Schedule 10.3 (Force Majeure and Business Continuity), paragraph 4 (Business Continuity)	Requirement to provide a Business Continuity Plan.
Schedule 11.1 (Franchise Performance Meetings), paragraph 1.3 (Franchise Performance Meetings)	Requirement to prepare and present such reports to each Franchise Performance Meeting as the Secretary of State may reasonably requests.
Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), paragraph 2 (Community Rail Partnerships)	Requirement to provide a Community Rail Report.
Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), paragraph 8 (Small and Medium-sized Enterprises)	Requirement to provide breakdown of Small and Medium-sized Enterprises.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), paragraph 9 (Apprenticeships)	Requirement to provide the information relating to Apprenticeships as set out in paragraphs 9.1 and 9.2.
Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), paragraphs 9.2/9.3 (Apprenticeships)	Requirement to submit the Apprenticeships Data Collection Form to the Rail Delivery Group.
Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), paragraph 9.4 (Apprenticeships)	Requirement to submit a draft Skills and Leadership Strategy.
Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), paragraph 9.6 (Apprenticeships)	Requirement to submit a copy of the assessment report produced by an independent body in respect of performance against the Rail Safety and Standard's Board's Sustainable Development Self-Assessment Framework.
Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), paragraph 10.1(d)	Requirement to submit a copy of the assessment report produced by an independent body in respect of performance against the Rail Safety and Standard's Board's Sustainable Development Self Assessment Framework
Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), paragraph 10.1(f)	Obligation to produce an improvement plan in respect of the targets against the Sustainable Development Strategy.
Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), paragraph 10.1(h)	Obligation to provide a report identifying progress in respect of delivering a sustainable franchise and revisions to the Sustainable Development Strategy.
Schedule 13.1 (Rail Industry Initiatives and Co-operation), paragraph 10.2	Requirement to provide copies of the certification audit reports and a copy of the ISO50001 Energy Review.
Schedule 14.4 (Designation of Franchise Assets), paragraph 9 (Provision of Information to the Secretary of State)	Obligation to provide such information as the Secretary of State requires in respect of Primary Franchise Assets including details of Security Interests.
Schedule 14.5 (Dealing with Franchise Assets), paragraph 5 (Miscellaneous)	Obligation to provide such information as the Secretary of State requires in respect of Security Interests.
Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism), paragraph 1.3 (Process for issue of a Certificate of Completion for RV Assets)	Obligation to provide such information as the Secretary of State requires in respect of RV Assets.
Schedule 14.6 (Residual Value Mechanism), paragraph 2(Maintenance Requirements for RV Assets)	Obligation to provide a schedule of condition in respect of RV Assets.

Reference	Summary of Obligation
Schedule 15.1 (Reletting Provisions), paragraphs 2 (Preparation for Reletting) and 3 (Data Site Information)	Obligation to provide certain information to the Secretary of State in respect of a reletting of the Franchise.
Schedule 15.3 (Handover Package), paragraph 1 (Handover Package Status)	Requirement to produce and maintain the Handover Package.
Schedule 15.3 (Handover Package), paragraph 2 (Director's Certificate)	Requirement to provide a director's certificate in each Franchisee Year.
Schedule 15.3 (Handover Pack) paragraph 3 (Key Contacts List)	Requirement to provide to the Secretary of State the Key Contacts List in accordance with the guidance issued to the Franchisee.
Schedule 15.4 (Provisions Applying on and after Termination), paragraph 9 (Information about Passengers)	Requirement to provide passenger numbers information, CRM Data and Yield Management Data on expiry of the Franchise Period.
Appendix 2 (Template Form of Supplemental Agreement) to Schedule 15.4 (Provisions Applying on and after Termination), paragraph 2.2 (Net Asset Statement)	Obligation to prepare and provide a net asset statement under the supplemental agreement.
Schedule 16 (Pensions), paragraph 6 (Discharge of Obligations)	Obligation to provide a certificate signed by the Trustee in relation to the Franchise Sections stating that the Franchisee has fully complied with its obligations under the Railways Pensions Scheme.
Schedule 17 (Confidentiality and Freedom of Information), paragraph 10 (Redactions)	Obligation to provide details of provisions of the Franchise Documents or any such variations which the Franchisee believes are exempt from the Freedom of Information Act, Environmental Information Regulations or the Act.
Schedule 17 (Confidentiality, Freedom of Information and Data Protection) paragraph 11.2 (Data Protection)	Requirement to notify the Secretary of State of any Franchise Data Breach upon the Franchisee's awareness of the same, including all relevant details, whether the Franchise Data Breach is by itself or by a Franchise Data Processor.
Schedule 17 (Confidentiality, Freedom of Information and Data Protection) paragraph 11.3 (Data Protection)	Requirement to notify (in the case of Franchisee) the Secretary of State and (in the case of any Franchise Data Processor) the Franchisee in writing of the full names and registered office addresses of the entities which are from time to time carrying out any storage, hosting and/or other processing of the CRM Data and/or the Personal Data relating to Franchise Employees, together with the storage, hosting and/or other processing location(s).